# Natal

## The Land

AND

## Its Story.

F. Systems


# NATAL

## The Land and Its Story:

*A Geography and History for the Use of Schools*

(WITH MAP)

BY

ROBERT RUSSELL

Superintendent Inspector of Schools, Natal.

---

PIETERMARITZBURG:
P. DAVIS AND SONS,
1891.

# PREFACE.

*This outline of the geography and history of Natal, prepared by desire of the Council of Education, is intended to help the young people of the Colony to acquire a knowledge of their homeland and to encourage them to take an intelligent interest in all that makes for its welfare and progress.*

*Much of the information in the geography is based on personal observation: much, on the authority of those most competent to know, chief among whom is our veteran physicist, Dr. Sutherland.*

*The map is presented by the Council of Education. Being only a school-map, details have been omitted in order that the main features of the Colony may be clearly shown.*

*The Story, drawn in its earlier chapters mainly from Mr. John Bird's exhaustive "Annals of Natal," has had the good fortune to be revised by the Nestor of South African history, Sir Theophilus Shepstone.*

*To him and to all others who have given me valuable aid I return my hearty thanks.*

*ROBERT RUSSELL.*

*January, 1891.*

# THE LAND.

# CONTENTS.

# THE LAND.

## I.—POSITION.

NATAL, the land we live in, is one of England's colonies. It forms a part of "Greater Britain," and of that widely-scattered and powerful empire on which the sun never sets. Look at a map of the world and you will see that Natal occupies only a small corner of the south-eastern part of Africa, the most compact and, even now, the least known of all the continents.

It lies outside the Tropics, and about 30 deg., or rather more than 2,000 English miles, south of the Equator. This distance from the Equator, or its latitude *south*, is about the same as that of South Australia, Norfolk Island, and the town of Coquimbo in Chili. Notice now that the line of 30 deg. *north* latitude runs through Cairo, through the northern part of India, through the middle of China, and through New Orleans. The people in these places live therefore as far north of the Equator as we live south of it.

Another line, also marked 30 deg., runs north and south through Natal and crosses the 30 deg. line of latitude in a southern part of the colony. This line is Natal's central meridian or line of longitude, and it is 30 deg. east of the similar line that runs from pole to pole through the English observatory at Greenwich. The general geographical

position of Natal is thus easily remembered:—**30 deg. south of the Equator and 30 deg. east from London.** If we had, however, to indicate its position on the globe more exactly and also to give some idea of its size, we should have to say that Natal lies between 27½ deg. and 31 deg. south latitude and between 29 deg. and 31½ deg. east longitude.

The Earth, as you know, moves from west to east, and places to the east of us receive the sun's light some time before we do. Every 15 deg. of longitude makes a difference of one hour. If a place is 15 deg. to the east of us its time is one hour before ours, if 15 deg. to the west its time is one hour behind. As we live 30 deg. east of London, it is 2 o'clock in the afternoon with us when it is only mid-day in London. Look again at Natal's 30 deg. line of longitude and you will see that it runs through the middle of the Transvaal, through Ujiji on Lake Tanganyika, through Alexandria, through St. Petersburg, and through the centre of Lapland. The clocks in all these places point therefore to the same time as ours in Natal, and they are all two hours in advance of London time.

Natal is about 6,800 nautical or geographical miles from London by sea and about 800 from Capetown. As every 60 of these miles is about the same length as 69⅙ ordinary or English miles, it is easy to change the one kind of mile into the other.

## II.—SIZE.

Natal is only a small country when compared with the British Islands, with its neighbour Cape Colony, with the whole of the British Empire, and with the vast continent of Africa. The British Islands are about six times larger,

Cape Colony is eleven times, the British Empire is nearly 430 times, and Africa is no less than 600 times.

Its **area**, or the amount of its land surface, is **20,000 square miles,** or **12,800,000 acres**—the same as that of Greece with its islands. If Natal were in the shape of a square, instead of an irregular diamond, each side would be nearly 142 miles long. It would take nearly 10,000 such squares placed closely together to cover the surface of the globe, and 2,750 of them to cover all the land. Its extreme distance in a straight line, or air-line, from north to south—from the top of the diamond to the mouth of the Umtamvuna—is **255 miles,** and from west to east—from Mont aux Sources to the mouth of the Tugela—**160 miles.**

## III.– BOUNDARIES

Except on the southward the boundaries of Natal are easily defined. On the west and north-west the **Drakensberg** separates it from Basutoland, the Orange Free State, and the Transvaal or South African Republic; on the north-east the **Tugela** and its tributary the **Buffalo** separate it from the Transvaal and Zululand; and on the east it is bounded by the **Indian Ocean.** Until the year 1866 the southern boundary was as well marked as the other boundaries. It ran up the Umzimkulu, the Ingwangwani, and the Little Ingwangwani rivers, and thence along a watershed of ten miles to Bushman's Neck, a natural bridle-pass in the Berg.

In 1866 an irregularly-shaped piece of territory, then part of Noman's Land, was annexed to Natal and named Alfred County in honour of a visit which Prince Alfred, now the Duke of Edinburgh, had lately paid to the South

African colonies. This county lies between the Lower Umzimkulu and the river Umtamvuna, and contains an area of 1,550 square miles. The southern boundary now runs along the **Umtamvuna** from the ocean to the **Ingeli Mountains**. It follows the ridge and then strikes off with many bends and angles in an easterly and north-easterly direction to the former boundary at the point where the Ibisi falls into the **Umzimkulu**. This boundary separates Natal from Pondoland on the south and from Griqualand East or Adam Kok's Country on the west and south-west.

Look at the map and you will see that a wedge-shaped piece of land, belonging to Cape Colony and lying between the north end of the Ingeli Mountains and the Middle Umzimkulu, makes our southern border run in a line as zig-zag as that just described.

At a point near the extreme north of the Colony, the apex of the diamond, the territories of the Free State, of the Transvaal, and of Natal all meet together. From the point of contact the boundary runs south-east along a water-course to the Buffalo River, four miles distant.

## IV.—GENERAL APPEARANCE.

A good idea of the general appearance of the surface of Natal would be obtained from a bird's-eye view of it, that is, the view we should get if we could look down on the country as a bird does when flying over it high in the air. Let us fancy ourselves viewing the landscape on a clear day from a balloon poised several thousand feet above the highest ground. We see lying below us what seems a huge slice of meadow-land, sloping south-eastwards from a grand natural rocky rampart to a seemingly boundless sea. The rampart is the **Drakensberg**, and the sea is the **Indian Ocean.**

Three well-defined silver streaks are seen winding from the mountain to the sea in a general direction at right angles to both. These are the **Tugela,** the **Umkomaas,** and the **Umzimkulu** rivers.

Descending nearer to the surface we find that the meadow is not flat, and that the silver streaks have considerably increased in number, and form a glistening network over the whole face of the country. We notice that the Drakensberg, besides being a continuous mountain-range, contains in places two or more short lines of elevation, divided by deep grassy valleys and wooded gorges, and abounding in romantic cascades, dizzy precipices, and towering peaks of fantastic form

> "That like giants stand,
> To sentinel enchanted land."

Mountain buttresses, some of them partly covered with natural forest, are seen to radiate in decreasing elevation from the parent ridge to the tangled bush and tropical vegetation of the coast.

The surface seems to consist almost entirely of large and small tongues of meadow-land flanked by water-courses and rain-channels, of deep river-valleys surmounted by grassy heights and majestic kranzen, of wooded kloofs and wild rocky ravines, and of isolated mountains and lofty hills, whose "sunless pillars" are sunk "deep in earth."

## V.—THE COAST LINE.

The coast line, from the mouth of the Umtamvuna to the mouth of the Tugela, stretches in a north-easterly direction for about **170 miles.** There is one mile of coast

for every 118 miles of surface. Scotland has one for every 6; England one for every 21; Europe one for every 190; South Africa, from Agulhas to the Stevenson Road, one for every 450; and Africa one for every 680. The more sea-coast a country has in proportion to its size the easier it is to get into the heart of the country, and the greater are the facilities thus possessed by it for trading with other places.

Low-lying sands are met with here and there along the Natal coast, but in most parts the beach, that battle-ground between sea and land, is fringed with shelving rocks and dangerous reefs. **Twenty-five distinct rivers** enter the sea, none of them navigable. The larger ones have sand-banks across their mouths and lagoons a short distance inland.

Hills, formed of wind-blown sand and broken shells, are found on various parts of the shore. The lime in the shells, dissolved by the rains, permeated the unstable mass and in process of time cemented it together. Further protection was given by the covering of natural bush which gradually made its appearance. The sand dunes of the Back Beach, the Bluff itself, and the green cones and domes of Alfred County, some of them 250 ft. high, owe their origin in this way to the winds and belong to what geologists hence call the Æolian formation.

The only break of importance in the coast-line is the land-locked **Harbour of Durban**—the water-gateway of the colony and of some of the districts beyond her borders. The wide and shallow **Bay**, of which the harbour is a part, contains, with its islands, about 5,000 acres or nearly 8 square miles. The entrance to the harbour and the Bay is formed to the north by a low sandy spit termed the **Point**, and to the south by the bold **Bluff** of Natal, 250 ft. high, surmounted by a light-house and battery, and covered with

natural forest to the water's edge. The **Bar,** a shifting mass of sand deposited by the sea across the fairway from the ocean to the harbour, and the comparative shallowness of the inside channels, anchorages, and mooring-grounds prevent the entrance at present of vessels drawing more than about 16 ft. of water. Engineering works of considerable magnitude are, however, being vigorously carried on, and it is expected that large ocean-going steam-ships will soon be able to cross the Bar in safety, and be moored alongside the wharves. At present they have to discharge and load their cargoes at the outer anchorage—an exposed natural bight lying between the end of the Bluff and the mouth of the River Umgeni.

English and Dutch sailors who called at the Port at the end of the 17th century, and some of whom travelled a considerable distance inland, describe the Bay as the "River of Natal." It has been thought that the Umgeni at one time discharged itself into the Bay, and that the Bay and the Bar are but examples of the lagoons and the sand-banks found at the mouths of many South African rivers.

## VI.—GEOLOGY.

"The Giant Ages heave the hill
And break the shore, and evermore
Make and break, and work their will."

The physical appearance of a country, the fertility of its soil, and the industries of its people depend to a great extent on the nature of its rocks. A rock is any kind of natural stone. It may be hard like granite and sandstone, or soft like soil and clay. There are three great kinds of rock. One kind is called Igneous, because it has been at

some time in a molten state beneath the crust of the earth; another is called Aqueous or Sedimentary, because it is formed of sediment collected and deposited by water; and the third is called Organic, because it consists of the remains of plants or animals. Granite is igneous, sandstone is sedimentary, and coal is organic.

Natal, as we have seen, is a very "broken" country. Its hills and its mountains, its valleys and its plains, are not made of one kind of stone but of many kinds—all interspersed in orderly disorder. The more common of these rocks are granite, greenstone-trap or basalt, sandstone, and shale. The first two are igneous, the other two are aqueous. Let us try to understand how these rocks have become as we find them now—tilted, contorted, heaved-up, broken, and tumbled together in apparently wonderful confusion—

> "Crags, knolls, and mounds, confusedly hurl'd,
> The fragments of an earlier world."

A geologist, however, finds nothing in their apparent disorder that cannot be accounted for by the principles of his science.

Countless ages ago **a huge mass of granite, flanked by granite-like rocks**—gneiss, quartz, mica-schist, clay-slate, and metamorphic limestone—lay deep down in the crust of the earth and formed the floor of what is now Natal. The floor was not even but was wavy and irregular. The waters, which at some far-off age rolled over this granitic floor, gradually deposited on it immense quantities of sand. In process of time this sand became hardened into layers or sheets of various kinds of **sandstone,** some of them many hundreds of feet thick. This deposit is sometimes called "Silurian" because of its similarity in

some respects to the great division of rocks so named by the eminent geologist, Sir Roderick Murchison. Unlike these rocks, however, this old or primitive sandstone is, in Natal at least, entirely devoid of fossils of any kind.

Powerful forces were all this time at work under the earth's crust, and earthquake throes heaved up huge masses of the granitic floor and its overlying sandstone strata, and tilted, cracked, and pierced them in many directions. Through the rents thus made molten matter persistently welled up from unknown depths, filling the rents and spreading itself abundantly in the hollows and on the surfaces. This extrusive molten matter is **greenstone-trap** or basalt, and the rents and fissures filled up by it are termed greenstone dykes or veins.

Above the sandstone we come upon a thick layer of **claystone porphyry,** or, as it is generally called, the **"Boulder Clay of Natal."** This is a curious formation, and one closely akin in appearance to the great Scandinavian Drift. It consists of a bluish-grey hardened mass, in which are embedded boulders and fragments of every kind of pre-existing rock. It stretches, in broken series, from Swaziland through Natal into Cape Colony, which it traverses by way of Grahamstown, Prince Albert, and Karoo Poort. Thence it strikes north and east to the Vaal River, near Kimberley. In some places this remarkable conglomerate formation is found no less than 250 miles wide and 1,200 feet thick. It is thought to be a vast moraine, deposited during thousands of years by the glacier-streams of some far-off epoch. This theory is supported by the fact that both the sandstone on which the boulder-clay now rests and the embedded boulders and pebbles are striated, scored, grooved, and polished.

Then come evidences of further internal disturbance—more upheavals, more cracks, and more molten trap. Above

and alongside the boulder clay and closely connected with it, we have another deposit called the **Pietermaritzburg Shale**, a rock formed by the continuous wearing-away action of water on the boulder clay and on the ubiquitous trap.

Again come signs of still further convulsions—huge displacements, enormous fissures, and overflowing and spreading trap. We now reach the topmost layer of all, **the new sandstone or coal formation.** This is composed of seams of light-grey sandstone, seams of coal, and seams of shale abounding in iron ore. These seams occur in no regular order and they are of no fixed depth. The sandstone and the shale, however, are far more abundant than the coal. Through and among all these layers too, and during their separate deposition, the trap made its upward and outward way.

The upheavals and displacements of all these rock-beds from the granitic floor to the surface have been on a most gigantic scale. The amount of molten trap that has made its way to the different surfaces and that has, when cool, in its turn undergone upheaval and displacement, is perhaps as great as that of any other rock in the colony. The highest peaks and ridges of the Drakensberg, of the Karkloof range, of Zwartkop, and of the Maritzburg Town Hill, are all formed of greenstone trap. Sandstone, either of the primitive or Silurian formation or of the more recent deposits, is found in every part of the country.

Some of the table-mountains, so common in the midlands and uplands, consist of huge upheaved layers of Silurian sandstone supported on granite or gneiss buttresses, which slope away to the valleys and river-beds below. Table Mountain near Maritzburg, Inhlazuka between Mid-Illovo and the Umkomaas, and Table Mountain at Capetown, are

fine examples of this formation. Other table-topped heights, such as Amajuba and the flat hills of Weenen and Klip River Counties, are formed of the newer sandstone deposits capped by layers of hard basaltic greenstone. Sometimes the strata from which the top of the mountain has been broken and then heaved up are found hundreds of feet below the summit. When the granitic rocks appear on the surface they generally take the form of low rounded hills or broad massive shoulders.

The most recent geological formation in the colony, except the **Æolian** mentioned in the chapter on the Coast Line, is one which is found on the sea-shore of Alfred County and which corresponds to the Chalk formation of Europe. It rises from 60 to 100 feet above the sea, consists chiefly of **greenish sand and clay**, and contains an abundance of **fossils**—ammonites of great size and of many varieties, bivalves 3 feet in diameter and one foot thick, sharks, reptiles of the turtle tribe, and trees 70 feet long and 2 feet in diameter.

In the new sandstone and coal deposits we find fossils of several species of ferns, horsetails, and reed-like calamites; roots, trunks, and branches of coniferous trees; and several varieties of extinct saurians. The most remarkable of these saurians is a huge lizard with two teeth resembling those of the walrus. These fossils, however, are few and uninteresting when compared with those found in the European coal measures.

But the surface of Natal has not the appearance now that it had at the end of the far-off period of those mighty convulsions and those enormous deposits. Since then gentler but yet powerful agencies have been at work moulding and rounding the country into its present shape. Rains, running water, winds, frosts, lightning, and chemical

action have gradually but constantly been laying bare and grinding into soil the hardest rocks. The softer parts of the surface have been hollowed into deep river-channels, chiefly by the erosive action of the sand and stones that were swept along and rolled about by the force of the waters as they cut their way from the mountains to the sea—

> "Streams that swift or slow
> Draw down Æonian hills, and sow
> The dust of continents to be."

The clear-cut features and the graceful curves of fair Natal have been sculptured by natural forces similar in kind to those that in all places and in all seasons are still seen in ceaseless operation.

> "The hills are shadows, and they flow
> From form to form, and nothing stands;
> They melt like mist, the solid lands,
> Like clouds they shape themselves and go."

## VII.—MOUNTAINS.

**The Kahlamba**, or **Drakensberg**, is the one mountain range of Natal. Under different names the great South African chain, of which the Drakensberg is a part, stretches round by way of Capetown for 1,400 miles between the mouth of the Orange River and the great bend of the Limpopo, in a line generally parallel to the coast, and at a distance from it varying between 50 and 150 miles.

Between Giant's Castle and Mont aux Sources on Natal's western boundary, the Berg, as it is commonly called, towers to a height of about 12,000 feet above the level of the sea, and about 7,000 feet above the country at its base.

The ridge between these two points is the highest land in South Africa. Further north the line of elevation becomes lower, and averages only between 6,000 and 7,000 feet above the sea.

The most prominent points in the Berg are **Champagne Castle** or **Cathkin Peak**, about 12,000 feet high; **Giant's Castle**, 11,000 feet; **Mont aux Sources**, 11,000 feet; the grey knob of **Tintwa**, 7,500 feet; **Mount Malani**, 7,500 feet; flat-topped historic **Amajuba**, 7,000 feet; and the **Inkwelo Mountain**, 6,812 feet.

The head-waters of the Umkomaas spring from the triple-faced natural fastness of Giant's Castle; the great Orange River rises on the western slopes of Cathkin Peak; and the Tugela, the Caledon, and several branches of the Wilge and Orange Rivers rush in cataracts from the sea of jagged peaks that form Mont aux Sources. This vast mountain mass, whose

> "rocky summits, split and rent,
> Form turret, dome, and battlement,"

was named by the French missionaries in Basutoland, and is the point at which the boundaries of Natal, Basutoland, and the Orange Free State join.

The chief passes over the Mountain are:—**Olivier's Hoek Pass**; **Bezuidenhout's Pass**; **Tintwa Pass**; **Van Reenen's Pass**; **De Beer's Pass**; **Sunday's River Pass**, near Mount Malani; **Botha's Pass**, near the sources of the River Ingogo; and **Laing's Nek**, near Charlestown on the main road to the Transvaal. All these passes are available for wagons. **Bushman's Neck**, **Bushman River Pass**, and several other tracks in the neighbourhood of Giant's Castle and in the part of the Berg north of the great angle, may be scaled only on horseback and on foot.

Traces of the pygmy Bushmen have been found in many of the mountains of South Africa. In the parts of the Berg above the head-waters of the Bushman River, the sides, roofs, and floors of the rocky cavities in which they lived are adorned with small rude sketches in red, brown, white, and black of hunting, raiding, and battle scenes, and of elands, hartebeesten, wild pigs, wild dogs, and serpents.

From the sea to the Berg the land rises by successive terraces, well-known to travellers on the main road between the Port and Van Reenen's Pass. The first terrace, 1,730 feet high, rises above the village of Pinetown, 12 miles inland; the second, 2,424 feet high, is at Botha's Hill; the third, 3,700 feet high, begins on the Town Hill above Maritzburg, 45 miles from the sea; and the fourth, 5,000 feet high: forms the highlands between the villages of Weston and Estcourt. From this point the surface rises and falls with little variation till the Pass is reached, which crosses the Berg at an elevation of 5,600 feet and at a distance of 225 miles from Durban by rail.

The Berg itself is the rugged cliff-edge of the crowning terrace, the vast Central Plateau of South Africa. The wide undulating sweep of the Free State, broken by numerous flat-topped hills, stretches away westward to the far-off plains of Southern Bechuanaland and the dreary expanse of the Kalahari Desert. There are indications of this vast Central Plateau having been at some remote age an immense inland sea, whose waters rushed in intermittent mighty cataracts over its mountain-rim as its rocky floor was gradually raised by a succession of volcanic disturbances.

Four well-defined ranges of lofty hills, all belonging to the New Sandstone or Coal formation, spread outward from the Berg, like the gigantic fingers of a mighty hand.

1. The northmost, the **Biggarsberg,** runs south-east through Klip River County from a corner of the Berg near Mount Malani to the junction of the Mooi River with the Tugela. Its most noticeable points are **One Tree Hill,** 5,866 feet; **Indumeni,** 7,200 feet; and **Umsinga.** Indumeni is probably the highest summit in Natal, outside the Berg.

II. The **Little Drakensberg** stretches north from Champagne Castle for 13 miles through a magnificently wild and broken country—the Switzerland of Natal and the home of the largest division of the historic Amangwane tribe.

III. The **Third Range** diverges from Giant's Castle and forms the water-shed between Bushman River and Mooi River. Its chief elevations are **Mount Erskine; Hlatikulu,** *the great forest*, the head-quarters of the troops during the Langalibalele rebellion; **Mooi River Heights; Umkolumba,** 5,009 feet; **Umhlumba; Pakadi;** and **Impulwana.**

IV. The **Fourth Range** also diverges from Giant's Castle. At **Spion Kop,** 7,039 feet, it separates into two branches, one going to the north-east and the other to the south-east.

1. The former again divides near **Mounts Arrochar,** 5,691 feet, and **West,** 5,800 feet, the northerly spur running through Umvoti County to Fort Buckingham, and having as its most prominent peaks **Kelly Hill, Krans Kop,** and **Eland's Kop;** and the southerly spur forming the **Karkloof Range** with **Mount Gilboa,** 5,794 feet, and ending at **Bester's Hoek** or **Blinkwater.**

2. The south-easterly branch from Spion Kop forms the water-shed between the Upper Umgeni on the north and the Upper Umkomaas and Umsunduzi on the south. It

runs to **Otto's Bluff** and contains the **Impendhla, Inhluzani,** 6,483 feet, and **Inhluzela** Mountains; **Zwart Kop,** 4,757 feet; and the **Town Hill** of Maritzburg. At Inhluzela a subsidiary range breaks off to the south-eastward and forms a watershed, running, by way of **Vaalkop, Botha's Hill, Field's Hill,** and **Cowie's Hill,** to the **Berea** heights, against which in bygone ages the Indian Ocean rolled its billows.

The **Great and Little Noodsberg,** respectively 7 and 3 miles long, and 3,400 and 3,000 ft. high, lie south of the Umvoti in Victoria County, and form the longest stretch of Silurian sandstone in South Africa. They merge to the southwards into the broken Inanda country and have as their most conspicuous summit the truncated cone of **Mount Sargeaunt** at the source of the Umhloti.

The **Ingeli Mountains** are a detached range of syenitic greenstone trap, 7,000 feet high, forming the western boundary of Alfred County.

The most noticeable mountains not directly connected with any of these ranges are :—**Insikazi** and **Inkonyi** in Alexandra County; **Inhlazuka,** between the Umkomaas and the Illovo; **Amabehlana,** 4,896 feet., in the south of Pietermaritzburg County; **Mahwaqa,** 6,834 feet high and the greatest isolated mountain mass in Natal, between the Upper Umkomaas and Ipolela Rivers; **Table Mountain** near Maritzburg; **Inyamazana** and **Isibuyazwi** in the north of Victoria County; **Mount Allard,** 14 miles north of Greytown; **Opisweni,** in the north of Umvoti County; **Tabamhlope,** 6,512 feet high, between Estcourt and Giant's Castle; **Umumba** and **Ilenge** or **Job's Kop,** 5,694 feet high, in the south-east of Klip River County; and **Leo Kop,** in the north-west of Klip River County.

## Summary of Mountains.

Main Chain :—**The Kahlamba or Drakensberg,** containing Champagne Castle or Cathkin Peak; Giant's Castle; Mont aux Sources; Tintwa; Mt. Malani; Amajuba; and Inkwelo.

Secondary Chains :—

1. **The Biggarsberg,** containing One Tree Hill; Indumeni; and Umsinga.
2. **The Little Drakensberg.**
3. **The Third Range,** containing Mt. Erskine; Hlatikulu; Mooi River Heights; Umkolumba; Umhlumba; Pakadi; and Impulwana.
4. **The Fourth Range,** containing Spion Kop; Mt. Arrochar; Mt. West; Kelly Hill; Krans Kop; Eland's Kop; Karkloof; Mt. Gilboa; Bester's Hoek or Blinkwater; Impendhla; Inhluzani; Inhluzela; Zwart Kop; Town Hill; Otto's Bluff; Vaalkop; Botha's Hill; Field's Hill; Cowie's Hill; and the Berea.
5. **The Great and Little Noodsberg** with Mt. Sargeaunt.
6. **The Ingeli Mountains.**

Isolated Peaks :—

Insikaiz; Inkonyi; Inhlazuka; Amabehlana; Mahwaqa; Table Mountain; Inyamazana; Isibuyazwi; Mt. Allard; Opisweni; Tabamhlope; Umumba; Ilenge or Job's Kop; and Leo Kop.

## VIII.—RIVERS.

A country without rivers is barren and desolate: a country well-watered is productive and popnlons. The arid plains of Anstralia and of Central Asia form a marked contrast to the hnmid valleys of the Ganges and the Amazon, both teeming with vegetable and animal life in almost endless variety. Rivers are natural highways which seldom or never need to be repaired. They carry onrselves and onr goods from place to place easily and cheaply; they drain the land and irrigate the fields; they drive our machinery and fill our reservoirs; and they add to the landscape a beanty which only running water can impart. Not every river, however, yields, or can be made to yield, all these blessings.

The rivers of Natal are too small, too rapid, and too shallow to allow of their being used as roads except to a very limited extent. Owing to the steep slope of the country, the *plain* or level part of the courses of even the largest of them is exceedingly small when compared with the *valley* and *torrential* portions. Cascades, waterfalls, and rapids are of frequent occnrrence. Like Tennyson's "Brook," most of our streams "bicker down a valley," "hurry down by thirty hills," "slip between the ridges," "chatter over stony ways," "fret their banks with many a curve," and "wind abont with many a silvery water-break above the golden gravel."

The rivers of Natal may be divided into three classes:—

1. Those which flow across the colony from the Berg to the sea;
2. Those rising in the spurs of the Berg or in the higher terraces; and
3. Those whose courses are within the coast region.

In the first class are the **Tugela**, the **Umkomaas**, and the **Umzimkulu**. These three rivers with their affluents and tributaries carry off the rain that falls and the water that rises on the Natal slope of the Drakensberg.

The northmost of the three, the Tugela, is the longest and the largest. Every stream rising in the Berg between Amajuba and Giant's Castle helps to swell its waters, and the area drained by it includes the whole of Klip River and Weenen Counties and the north part of Umvoti and Victoria Counties. The basin of this one river comprises nearly half the land in the colony. The other part of the Berg, the part that runs almost in a straight line south-west between Giant's Castle and Bushman's Neck, is drained by the Umkomaas and the Umzimkulu.

The **Tugela** or *Startling* river is the noblest stream in Natal. It is 200 miles long, and near its mouth is about 150 yards broad. It rises on the eastern side of Mont aux Sources in a horse-shoe curve at the great western angle of the Berg and leaps thence into the colony with a nearly perpendicular fall of 1,800 feet. Shortly after leaving the pool at the base of the rugged towering precipice, the river, already considerably augmented by numerous cascades and mountain streams, rushes through a cañon two miles in length. The scenery throughout its whole course is always pleasing, and often picturesque and grand. For miles below its junction with the Buffalo—60 miles from the sea—it chafes and foams with many a curious bend through deep rocky channels flanked by stupendous cliffs, lofty hills, and wild stony glens. The Tugela is not navigable, and, like most other Natal rivers, its mouth is nearly closed by a bar of sand thrown up by the ocean. Its chief tributaries are **Klip River, Sunday's River,** and the **Umzinyati** or **Buffalo,** from the north; and the **Mnwe,** the **Umlambonja,**

the **Little Tugela,** the **Blauwkrans, Bushman River, Mooi River,** and the **Inadi,** from the south. Klip River is joined near Ladysmith by the **Sand River** from the neighbourhood of Van Reenen's Pass; Sunday's River receives the **Inkunzi** and the **Waschbank**, both of which traverse the southern part of the coal district; the Buffalo is augmented by the **Ingagani** (with its tributaries the **Horn** and the **Incandu**) and the historic **Ingogo**; the Little Tugela from both flanks of Cathkin Peak is joined by the *strong* current of **Sterk Spruit**; and the **Little Bushman River** falls into the Bushman River near the village of Estcourt.

Though the **Umkomaas**, or *Gatherer of waters*, rises in the Berg and flows across the colony to the ocean, the area which it drains is small compared with that of the Tugela. Its course is both wild and picturesque. In places its windings through grassy plains resemble the links of "the mazy Forth." Occasionally in the upper part of its course it flows through wide, deep, sheltered valleys, coast-like in climate and vegetation. Its most important tributaries are the **Uzani, Eland River,** and the **Umkobeni** from the north; and the **Inhlaveni** or **Ixopo** from the south.

The **Umzimkulu** or *Great* river ranks next in size to the Tugela. Its middle portion separates Natal from Griqua Land East. It drains the part of the Berg lying between the sources of the Umkomaas and Bushman's Neck, the extreme south of Pietermaritzburg and Alexandra Counties, and the northern half of Alfred County. Its scenery is as striking and varied as that of the two other great rivers. Wooded heights, green hills, gigantic fissures, quiet reaches, and sounding rapids are found all along its course. Small steamers occasionally ascend a few miles from

its mouth, and engineering works are in progress which it is hoped will make their passage over the bar and through the channel safer and more frequent. Durban's Bluff, Point, Bar, and harbour works are all there in miniature. The tributaries of the Umzimkulu are the **Ipolela** from the north; and the **Ingwangwani** (with the **Little Ingwangwani**) and the **Umzimkulwana** from the south. It receives another large tributary from the south, the Ibisi. This river flows entirely through Cape Colony territory, but joins the Umzimkulu at a point where the boundaries of the two colonies meet.

The rivers included in the second class are five in number:—the **Umvoti,** the **Umgeni,** the **Umlaas,** the **Illovo,** and the **Umtamvuna.**

The **Umvoti** rises near Mt. Gilboa, in the Karkloof range, and drains the greater part of Umvoti County and part of Victoria County. It has one large tributary, the **Ihlimbitwa,** which joins it from the north. The **Umgeni** is the central river of the colony. It rises among the bold Spion Kop hills, 30 miles from Giant's Castle, flows through the pastoral district of Maritzburg County, foams down the wild ravines of the Inanda, and enters the sea four miles north of Durban. It has two well-known waterfalls, both within 12 miles of Maritzburg. The upper fall, at the village of Howick, is formed by the river hurling itself headlong in a single sheet of foaming water over a precipice to the placid plain, 350 feet below. The lower fall is about 12 miles further down the river, and close to the road between Maritzburg and Greytown. It is only a fifth of the height of the other, but its wide rocky ledge breaks the stream into numerous cascades which sparkle spray-laden among the bushes and the moss-grown rocks. The tributaries of the Umgeni are **Lion's River, Karkloof River,**

the **Impolweni** (with **Sterk Spruit**), and the **Umqeku**, from the north; and the **Umsunduzi** from the south. The **Umlaas** rises in the high lands north of Byrnetown, flows through a defile in the New Leeds district, is tapped to form Durban's main water-supply, and enters the sea 10 miles south of the Port. The **Illovo** rises in the yellow-wood forest at the head of Byrne valley, and, with its tributary the **Umquahumbi**, drains the country lying between the basins of the Umlaas and the Umkomaas. It flows past the village of Richmond, through the broken country north of Inhlazuka, and enters the sea 20 miles south of Durban. The **Umtamvuna** forms the southern boundary of the colony.

The principal rivers included in the third class are, from north to south:—the **Sinkwazi**, **Nonoti**, **Umhlali**, **Tongaat**, **Umhloti**, and **Umhlanga**, all in Victoria County; the **Umbilo** and **Umhlatuzan**, running into the Bay; the **Umbogintwini** and **Amanzamtoti**, in Durban County; the **Amahlongwa**, **Umpambinyoni**, **Umzinto**, **Ifafa**, **Umtwalumi**, and **Umzumbi**, in Alexandra County; and the **Imbezana** in Alfred County.

Numberless rivulets or spruits abound, some of them with banks imposing enough for a considerable stream, and many of them giving their names to the districts through which they flow. Though almost dry in winter they are often impassable during heavy rains, and for hours after severe thunderstorms.

## Summary of Rivers.

From the Drakensberg.

1. TUGELA.
   - *Left Bank.*
   - Klip River - Sand River
   - Sunday's River { Inkunzi / Waschbank
   - Buffalo or Umzinyati { Ingangani { Horn / Incandu } / Ingogo }
   - *Right Bank.*
   - Mnwe
   - Umlambonja
   - Little Tugela—Sterk Spruit
   - Blauwkrans
   - Bushman River—Little Bushman [River
   - Mooi River
   - Inadi

2. UMKOMAAS.
   - *Left Bank.*
   - Uzani
   - Eland River
   - Umkobeni
   - *Right Bank.*
   - Inhlaveni or Ixopo

3. UMZIMKULU.
   - *Left Bank.*
   - Ipolela
   - *Right Bank.*
   - Ingwangwani—Little Ingwangwani
   - Umzimkulwana
   - Ibisi

From the Uplands.

*Left Bank.*

1. Umvoti - Ihlimbitwa

*Left Bank.*

2. Umgeni.
   - Lion's River
   - Karkloof River
   - Impolweni—Sterk Spruit
   - Umqeku

*Right Bank.*

   - Umsunduzi

3. Umlaas

*Left Bank.*

4. Illovo — Umquahumbi
5. Umtamvuna

Coast Rivers.

1. Sinkwazi.
2. Nonoti.
3. Umhlali
4. Tongaat
5. Umhloti
6. Umhlanga
7. Umbilo
8. Umhlatuzan
9. Umbogintwini
10. Amanzamtoti
11. Amahlongwa
12. Umpambinyoni
13. Umzinto
14. Ifafa
15. Umtwalumi
16. Umzumbi
17. Imbezana

## IX.—CLIMATE.

The climate or weather of a place depends on its temperature, its rainfall, and its winds, and on the way in which they are distributed throughout the year. These again depend on several conditions, but chiefly on the distance of the place from the Equator, on its height, on its proximity to the sea, on the ratio between the length of its coast-line and its surface, on its slope, and on the direction of its mountain chains.

Natal is in the South Temperate Zone, about 230 miles at its northmost point from the Tropic of Capricorn, and its climate may be described as **warm-temperate and sub-tropical,** and as **continental** rather than insular. The surface, as we have seen, rises from the level of the sea to two and a quarter miles above it—on the highest peaks of the Berg. This difference of height, in a little over a hundred miles in a straight line, gives, within a small area, **several varieties of climate,** well-marked but all perfectly healthy. Natal somewhat resembles Northern Italy in this respect. In both countries warm low-lying valleys, breezy uplands, and lofty mountains, with their corresponding varieties of climate and productions, rapidly merge each into the other. Pietermaritzburg, the capital of Natal, is 2,218 ft. high; Estcourt is 3,832 ft.; Dundee is 4,104 ft.; Highlands Railway Station is 5,157 ft.; and Charlestown is 5,386 ft. The village of Leadhills, in the south of Scotland, is 1,280 ft. above the sea, and is the highest inhabited place in Great Britain. Berne, the capital of Switzerland, is 1,700 ft. high, and Madrid, the most elevated city in Europe, is only 2,200 ft.—about the same height as Pietermaritzburg. The loftiest town in the world is the silver-mining village of Cerro de Pasco,

in Pern. It is 13,720 ft. high, is bitterly cold on account of its height, and has air so rarefied that visitors can breathe with difficulty.

On the **coast** of Natal the air is, as a rule, **humid** and **warm**; in the **midlands** it is generally **dry** and **cool**; and in the **uplands** it may be described as **bracing** and **cold.** All the districts, however, have many weeks during the year of perfect English snmmer weather. There are **two seasons,** summer and winter—the one warm, clondy, and rainy, and the other cool, bright, and dry. Snmmer begins in October and ends with March. At midsummer the snn rises at 5 o'clock and sets at seven: at midwinter it rises at 7 and sets at 5. There is a little twilight in winter but hardly any in snmmer. There is a very short spring and a very short antnmn. The snmmer months are not all rainy and the winter months are not all dry. Occasional cold days occur in summer and occasional hot days in winter. In up-conntry districts the snmmer heat is often more scorching than on the coast, but the nights are generally much cooler. Sometimes the sun's rays are felt to be oppressively hot while the Berg is seen covered with snow.

At Pietermaritzburg the **average yearly temperature** is abont **64 degrees.** It is sometimes as low as 28 degrees and sometimes as high as 98 degrees. At Dnrban the average is **69½ degrees,** and the extremes 42 degrees and 98 degrees. Now and again, both in snmmer and winter, the thermometer varies as much as 35 degrees during the twenty-four hours. Probably the greatest daily variation known in Durban occurred on the 21st September, 1890. A very hot northerly wind raised the temperature for an honr or two in the middle of the day to no less than 110½ degrees in the shade. In the evening a westerly breeze cooled down the air to 63 degrees. The average daily

range for each season does not, however, exceed 20 degrees. In the mid-winter months frost is sometimes seen on the coastlands, even at the sea-level. Snow-storms occasionally occur in the uplands, and sometimes for weeks together the ebon mass of the Berg is beautifully diversified with patches of dazzling white.

At Pietermaritzburg the **annual rainfall** is about **38 inches**; and at Durban, **40**. The average number of days on which rain falls during the year is 117 in Maritzburg and 125 in Durban. An average of about 5 inches falls in every wet or summer month, and a little less than 2 inches in every dry or winter month. Thunder-storms and hail-storms, the latter often destructive, occur generally in summer and with decreasing frequency and severity as we approach the coast. In England about half the days in the year are rainy, and the average annual rainfall on the east coast is about 25 inches and on the west coast about 35.

The prevailing **winds** on the coast are from the **north-east** and the **south-west**. The former is a moisture-laden relaxing wind from the Indian Ocean; the latter, locally called "the doctor," is a cool and bracing wind from the southern seas. In summer the south-westerly wind generally brings rain with it. The character and direction of both winds are somewhat modified as they travel inland. A disagreeable, parching, hot wind, frequently accompanied by a dust-storm, blows from the northward for a few hours, and sometimes even for a few days, at a time. It occurs chiefly in early summer, and on an average during 25 days in the year. It is much less common on the coast than in the uplands, and it is often followed by the cool south-westerly wind and a thunderstorm or rain.

## X.—SOIL AND PRODUCTIONS.

The hills and mountains of Natal, like those of the other parts of South Africa, are, as we have seen, composed chiefly of granite, gneiss, sand-stone, clay-stone, porphyry, trap, and shale. Where these rocks do not stand out in their rugged or rounded boldness, they are covered with a soil composed mainly of their disintegrated particles mingled with vegetable mould—the accumulation of untold ages. Light sandy soils preponderate near the coast. Further inland loams are met with which vary in colour from yellow and light brown to a deep red. On most of the hills and watersheds the soil is shallow and capable of nourishing only light crops and the natural grasses on which are reared the sheep, goats, cattle, and horses of the upland farmers. On plains and by river-banks the soil is deeper and richer, and with a little attention to manuring and irrigation it will produce heavy crops adapted to the climate of the district.

Irrigation is extensively and profitably carried on in the United States, in India, in Australia, and in Italy, and no insuperable difficulty prevents many parts of Natal being artificially watered by some of her numerous streams. Pastoral lands would thus become agricultural lands, agricultural lands would become more productive, and small well-tilled farms would spring up among the existing stretches of un-improved veld.

The soil is "patchy" or "spotted," rich and poor, but there is little of it that will not profitably respond to intelligent industry. This diversity of soil, and the marked diversity of climate, give a corresponding variety to the productions. Sugar, tea, coffee, tobacco, arrowroot, cayenne pepper, and nearly all kinds of tropical and sub-tropical

fruits are grown on the coast. Maize or Indian corn, locally called "mealies," is the staple grain of the colony and thrives from the sea to the Berg. Kafir-corn or *amabele*, a hardy kind of millet, is also widely distributed and, though an excellent food plant, is used by the natives chiefly for making *utyuala* or native beer. Wheat, oats, and barley are grown in the midlands and the uplands. Nearly all the European flowers, fruits, and vegetables are found in the parts of the colony suited to their cultivation.

The total amount of **land under tillage** is about **315,000 acres,** or nearly **1-40th of the whole surface.** The natives cultivate about 243,000 acres, and the Europeans about 72,000 acres. About 5-6ths of this tilled land is planted with maize and kafir-corn. Sugar-cane, pumpkins, sweet potatoes, and oats are the next most plentiful crops. The pastoral lands support nearly one million of sheep and goats, three-quarters of a million of cattle, about 62,000 horses, and nearly 30,000 pigs.

The eucalyptus or gum-tree, in many varieties; many species of conifers, especially pines and cypresses; and other useful and ornamental trees and shrubs, are being extensively planted near homesteads in all parts of the colony. Attention is being given to the export for tanning purposes of the bark of the *Acacia Mollissima* or Australian wattle. This fast growing tree seems to thrive well in all localities, but especially so in the Noodsberg district and in most parts of Umvoti County.

The steps now being taken to utilize the extensive deposits of coal which exist in the northern parts of the colony give promise of making Durban an important coaling station at no distant date. As far back as June, 1839, the Secretary of State drew the attention of Sir George Napier, the Governor of the Cape, to the value of Natal's "black

diamonds." He wrote "The fact stated by Captain Jervis of the discovery of coal in Natal lying on or near the surface of the ground would appear to demand careful investigation, as such a resource might prove of the utmost importance to steam navigation in the adjacent seas."

Marble is found near the mouth of the Umzimkulu. Iron ore is widely distributed, the best being found near the coal. Copper occurs in the Tugela valley and in the County of Durban, and gold is being extracted from the quartzose veins which traverse the gneiss of the Upper Umzinto district. Alluvial gold is found in minute quantities in the beds and banks of several of the south-coast streams, and *colour* more or less perceptible may be obtained from nearly every quartz reef in the colony.

## XI.—PLANTS.

European and sub-tropical vegetables—flowers, fruits, roots, grasses, grains, shrubs, and trees—are grown in those parts of the colony that are severally adapted by soil and climate to their successful cultivation.

Indigenous plants are very varied and very numerous. A belt of coast-land, extending for about twelve miles from the sea, was originally covered with a dense "bush," or jungle, of evergreen trees and flowering shrubs, interspersed with short stretches of flower-enamelled natural park. Clumps of the graceful date-palm and of the tropical broad-leaved banana are seen growing wild all along these coast-lands. There, too, are found many varieties of the leafless, succulent tree-euphorbia and its pygmy but picturesque cousins, the *Candelabra Spurge* and the *Caput Medusæ*.

Not many of the wild plants have edible fruits. Perhaps the three best known are the Amatungulu, the Cape

gooseberry, and the Dingaan apricot. The Amatungulu or Natal plum, is akin to the *vinca* or periwinkle of the English shrubbery. It is found chiefly near the beach, and has glossy dark-green leaves, a white star-like flower, and a dark-red plum-like berry. As the well-known Cape gooseberry has been naturalised from Cape Colony it can hardly be called indigenous. It is not really a gooseberry, but belongs to the same poisonous family—*solanaceæ*—as the deadly night-shade and the universal potato. The Dingaan apricot, or Kaw apple, is the fruit of a species of ebony tree.

Heaths, so abundant in Cape Colony, are almost unknown in Natal. Geraniums are found, but not in great variety. Wild field-flowers of many kinds, bright with colour and in great abundance, are seen to perfection in the early days of spring, as soon as the first rains have changed into living green the sombre brown and fire-blackened hues of winter. Bulbous plants are very numerous—amaryllids, lilies, and irises—all of many varieties. The more common are the fire-lily, with its flame-coloured blossoms; the Natal lily with its large white and pink ribbed bells; the painter's-brush-like *Hæmanthus* or "poison-root" of the old Dutch settlers; the Ifafa lily, with its fuchsia-like clusters; several beautiful species of gladiolus; and the graceful ixias, or so-called "flowering-grasses." The beautiful creamy-white "arum-lily," though not really a lily, is closely allied to the pig-lily of the English greenhouses.

Besides these the most noticeable plants of the veld and the forest are the orange and crimson Leonitis, six feet high; the Gazenia, something like the dandelion; a pink oxalis; the large purple-flowered *Osbeckia Umlaasiana;* climbing-plants innumerable—"many-hued trailers rich with flowers"—; spider-worts; several Acanthaceous plants allied to the English calceolaria and fox-glove; many dis-

tinct species of the *Compositæ* family, including several kinds of "everlastings"; stapelias or carrion-flowers in the uplands; and cinchonaceous plants, including gardenias and numbering nearly one hundred species.

Several kinds of aloes, with tufted spikes of orange and red florets, and many thick-leaved plants akin to them, are widely distributed. Earth-growing orchids of several varieties are common. Ferns are very varied and very abundant. The graceful tree-fern is found in several localities.

There are natural **forests** on the coast, in the midlands, and in the uplands, each with its characteristic trees. With the exception of those in the Lower Umzimkulu division, nearly all the coast forests belong to private individuals. The trees are generally low—from 30 to 60 feet high—many of them leguminous evergreens, and most of them bearing gay and bright flowers. The best-known are the water-boom; the flat crown; the wild chestnut; the knobthorn; the red and the white milkwoods; red-ivory wood; iron-wood; umsimbiti; and the Kafir boom, a winter-flowering species of leguminous "coral-tree."

The midland forests consist chiefly of thorn bush—various species of *Mimosæ*—stretching over a considerable space but not at all dense. These thorn-trees are generally flat-topped, small in size, and protected by strong thorns or spikes. Considerable patches are being cleared for firewood and for cultivation by the natives, and many self-sown young trees are destroyed every year by grass fires.

The upland forests are found chiefly in the kloofs of the mountains and on their moisture-facing southern slopes. They are separated from the thorn bush by a clearly-defined belt of grass country. The best-known trees are the upright yellow-wood, a species of yew; sneezewood, a horse-chestnut grained like satin wood; stinkwood, a laurel grained

like French walnut; black ironwood, an olive; white ironwood, a kind of rue; and essenwood, the South African ash.

The Coast Forests and the Thorn Bush cover between them about one-and-a-half million acres, and the Upland heavy timber Forests about 150,000 acres.

Besides the commercial value of the wood, bark, and other products of the trees themselves, forests are beneficial to a country in many different ways. They are indispensable to the beauty of the landscape; they afford shelter to game; they regulate the rainfall, and, if extensive enough, probably augment it; they increase production from the soil by acting as breakwinds and by furnishing vegetable-mould; and they not infrequently enhance the mildness and salubrity of the climate. The spreading foliage, the trunks and tangled roots, and the surface undergrowth are a natural protection to the earth from the destructive scouring action of heavy tropical and sub-tropical rains. Forests conserve the rainfall and thus act as natural reservoirs to the springs. They make to filter slowly the life-sustaining water which, but for this restraining influence, would deeply furrow the land and lay bare hill and mountain side as it rushed soil-laden to the lower levels on its way to the ocean.

As forests and protective herbage are destroyed, so must the productive-surface of our steeply-sloping and sub-tropical rain-washed country decrease both in depth and fruitfulness. Our valuable natural forests cannot be too carefully preserved; and tree-planting, adapted to soil and climate, cannot be too vigorously carried on in every part of the colony.

## XII.—ANIMALS.

For ages countless numbers of wild animals of nearly every kind found almost undisturbed homes in the vast stretches of neutral uninhabited country that surrounded every large South African tribe. But as the land became peopled by the rifle-carrying white man, the need of pasture for his flocks and herds, the love of sport, and especially the gain to be made from skins, horns, and ivory, gradually thinned out and drove inland the denizens of the veld and the forest. Persons now living have hunted in Natal the elephant, the lion, the buffalo, the quagga, the gnu or wildebeest, the blesbok, the gemsbok, and the ostrich. Their fathers have probably seen, in addition to these, the rhinoceros, and perhaps the giraffe too.

Leopards and panthers—the "tigers" of the Dutch—are still found in thickly-wooded kloofs. "Tiger-cats"—a smaller variety of leopard—and wild-cats are plentiful in some districts. The hippopotamus or "sea-cow" is occasionally found but is gradually disappearing. There are three kinds of hyenas—all called "wolves" by the Dutch. The burrowing earth-wolf—a species of civet—has the habits of a fox, but is like a small hyena with a bristling ridge of hair down its back. There are also jackals, wild or hunting-dogs, wild pigs, ant-bears, porcupines, otters, pole-cats, weasels, squirrels, bats, moles, cane-rats, hares, rabbits, rock-rabbits, and field and house rats and mice. The rock-rabbit is not however a rabbit. It is really a daman, and belongs to the genus *Hyrax*, of which Cuvier, the great naturalist, says "Excepting the horns, they are little else than rhinoceroses in miniature." The cony of the Old Testament is the species of Hyrax found in Syria and Palestine.

Chacmas or Natal baboons are found among the cliffs that frown over river-valleys and ravines, and silver-grey monkeys abound in the bush of the coast districts.

South Africa is noted for the number and variety of its antelopes. Nine different kinds are found in Natal—three large and six smaller. The large kinds are the eland, the hartebeest, and the boschbok. The smaller are the ouribi, the duiker, the rietbok, the rooibok—the chamois of South Africa,—and the beautiful little blauwbok or epeti, not much larger than a good-sized hare. The eland, hartebeest, female boschbok or imbabala, ouribi, rietbok, and rooibok are "royal" game, and cannot be hunted except by express permission of the Governor.

The birds of Natal are very numerous and some of them are very beautiful. We find members of all the seven orders into which this class of vertebrate animals is divided. Some of these orders, such as the *Rasores*, or scraping birds, the *Insessores* or perching birds, and the *Raptores* or rapacious birds, contain two or more families of the order, several species of the family, and many varieties of the species.

There are two kinds of vultures. One—the large black and white species—is very common. The other—sometimes called the white crow—is a smaller and less common bird, and seems closely allied to the Alpine or Egyptian vulture of North Africa and Southern Europe. The useful "royal" secretary bird is classed by naturalists sometimes as a vulture, sometimes as a falcon, and sometimes it is put in a class by itself. It gets its name from its long head feathers, which look like pens stuck behind its ears; and it lives chiefly on snakes, heedless of their venomed fangs. There are three kinds of large eagles and several varieties of kites, falcons, hawks, and owls.

The *Grallatores* order—waders or stilt birds—is represented by cranes, herons, ibises, storks, snipes, and plovers; and the *Natatores* or swimming-birds, by gulls and other sea-birds, wild ducks and geese, pelicans and flamingoes.

Pheasants, guinea-fowl, partridges, quails, and wild pigeons and doves are widely distributed. The largest game-bird is the paauw—not a peacock as the name would imply, but a species of bustard or wild turkey, and a connecting link between this order—*Rasores* or scraping-birds—and the *Grallatores* or wading-birds. The koraan is a smaller variety of the wild turkey.

Among the *Scansores* or climbing-birds we have parrots, both in the coast thickets and in the up-country forests; lories, richly-tinted and mellow-coloured; the emerald cuckoo, resplendent in green and gold; and a species of toucan, found abundantly in the south-coast bush.

The order *Insessores*, or the perching-birds, is the largest. It includes crows of several varieties—the most noticeable being one with a thick and hooked beak and a white crescent on its back—; swallows, martins, and swifts; shrikes or butcher-birds; honey-suckers or sun-birds, that flit like living gems from flower to flower; and finches, weaver-birds, king-fishers, and other "bright birds with starry wings" that haunt every bosky kloof and reed-grown spruit.

Crocodiles are found in unfrequented parts of the rivers, and iguana-lizards—4 and 5 feet long—are often seen basking on the wooded banks of the larger streams. There are several varieties of tortoises; and turtles, sometimes weighing as much as six or seven hundredweight are often found in the lagoons and near the mouths of the larger rivers. Small lizards of many kinds and varying-hued chameleons are very common. Frogs are in great abundance in all parts of the

colony. Snakes are very numerous and of many kinds. The largest is the handsome python or Natal rock-snake (*Hortulia Natalensis*), sometimes over 20 ft. long and common on the coast. Like all the members of the Boa family it has no poisonous teeth but kills its prey by coiling round it and crushing it. Much smaller but much more dangerous is the deadly poison-fanged imamba, found in three varieties—black, green, and blue. This snake and the "spuug-slang" or spitting-snake, seem to be allied to the cobras or hooded snakes. The sluggish, flat-headed puff-adder, though not aggressive, bites with almost certain fatal effect. There are many other kinds of snakes, vipers, and adders. Among them are night-adders, house-adders, water-snakes, grass-snakes, and tree-snakes. Many of them, however, are non-poisonous, and nearly all of them seem glad to glide from observation.

Several varieties of scale-fish, eels, and a fish locally called the barbel, are found in most of the rivers. The scale-fish is probably a variety of the carp, and the barbel is really a species of the leather-mouthed, mud-loving *silurus*. Trout have been introduced into some of the cold up-country streams. Edible fishes of excellent quality abound in the sea near the coast and in the estuaries of the rivers. The best-known are shad, rock-cod, mullet, mackerel, bream, snipefish, and soles. Sharks, stingrays, and electrical torpedoes are not at all uncommon. Jndging from the abundance of their remains found on the shore, the devil-fish or octopus and the cuttle-fish must be plentiful off the coast and attractive as food to both fishes and birds. The jelly-fish or *medusa* with its umbrella-shaped swimming-bell is very common. Mussels and oysters are plentiful in the rocky parts of the beach, and crabs, cray fish, and shrimps are widely distributed. Land crabs are plentiful and are

preyed on by otters and the larger lizards. Several hundreds of different kinds of shells are found all along the shore, and so abundantly in some places as to be regularly used for making lime. The rocky pools of the beach teem with beautiful tiny molluscs and zoophytes of exquisite form and colour.

The well-known *Helix* family—land shells or snails—is in great variety and in great abundance. The *Bulimus* is the largest species, and the *Achatina* is the most beautiful. The ground in many places is strewn with shells.

Crickets, locusts, grasshoppers, scorpions, beetles, and fire-flies are common. So also are the pugnacious *mantidæ* and the strange protective-resemblance family of *phasmidæ*. Butterflies and moths are in great variety—many of them very large and very beautiful. Noisy *cicadæ*, dragon-flies, wasps and bees, hornets, mosquitoes, spiders, ticks, and fish-moths are all among the "common objects of the country." Ants of many kinds are found in all parts of the colony, and ant-hills, two or three feet high, are a common feature in the landscape. The most destructive is the white ant, which however is not a true ant, but belongs to the nerve-winged order of insects—an order which includes also dragon-flies and the short-lived may-flies.

## XIII.—PEOPLE.

The number of people living in a country depends chiefly on its natural resources, *i.e.*, on its mineral wealth, on the nature and amount of its agricultural produce, on its manufactures, on its forests, and on the facilities for trade afforded by its geographical position. A pastoral country

needs only a few people, an agricultural and mining country needs more than a pastoral one, but a manufacturing, mining, and commercial country needs and can support many workers of many kinds. The county of Lanark in Scotland has three wards or divisions—upper, middle, and lower. The upper ward is hilly, pastoral, and thinly peopled; the middle has several villages supported by its mines and its well-tilled farms; while the lower ward with its enormous shipbuilding, manufactures, mining, and commerce, is one of the most densely-populated parts of the United Kingdom.

Natal is mainly a pastoral and inland-transport trading country, and it is in consequence but sparsely peopled. It has **532,000 inhabitants,** or about one-ninth of the population of London. The **Natives** or **Kafirs** number **460,000**; the **Whites, 38,000**; and the **Indians, 34,000.** There are on an average 27 persons—white and black—to every square mile. The British Islands have 300, and Belgium, with its mines, its manufactures, and its garden-tilled soil, supports no fewer than 520.

The whites are Europeans or of European descent and are chiefly **English, Dutch, and German.** The English live mostly in the towns, on the coast, and in the midlands; the Dutch are South African born and are settled as sheep and cattle farmers or *boers* in the upper districts; and the Germans are engaged either in trade and commerce in the towns or in farming at settlements like New Germany, New Hanover, and Hermannsburg. About three-fifths of the whites are colonial born and are thus Natalians. **Trade, transport,** and **farming** are the chief occupations. Manufactures and mining are only in their infancy.

The need of a supply of continuous labour for sugar-growing and manufacture and for other farming industries,

and the unwillingness of the native to engage himself to work for more than a few months at a time, led to the introduction in 1860 of indentured labourers from India. They are called **"coolies"** from the Hindustani word *kûli*, a porter or labourer. After five years' continuous service they are "free." If they remain in the colony for a second term of five years, they can, at any time during the subsequent three years, claim a free passage back to India. Many, however, never return to their native land but remain in Natal or go to the neighbouring states as domestic servants, grooms, gardeners, labourers, hawkers, traders, and farmers. There are now over three times more "free" than "indentured" Indians in the colony. Many hundreds of Indians of a class above the coolie and locally but erroneously called "Arabs" have come to Natal at their own expense to push their way as shop-keepers and traders. All these immigrant Indians are subjects of our Queen-Empress.

The **Kafirs,** unlike most other dark races when brought into contact with whites, are increasing in number and prosperity. "Kafir" is not a national name but an Arabic word meaning "unbeliever," and it was applied by Mohammedans and Portuguese to all the natives living in the vast region between Mozambique and the Cape. They belong to the great **Bantu** race, which includes all the tribes south of the 6th degree of north latitude excepting only the Hottentots and the Bushmen. These two dying primeval races were gradually driven southward by the great Kafir wave and are now found only in the south and south-west of the continent. All the other countless dialects spoken in this immense triangle can be traced to a remote mother-tongue essentially different from that spoken by the Negro races to the north.

The Natal natives comprise 85 tribes living under separate chiefs in 37 districts or "locations," set apart for their special occupation by the Government, mostly between the years 1847 and 1864. The aggregate area of the locations is 2,347,428 acres or about two-elevenths of the total surface of the colony. They are generally more suitable for grazing lands than for tilled farms and industrial occupation, and in them are to be found the grandest scenery and the most broken country in the colony. The five largest locations are Umvoti, Klip River, Upper Tugela, Inanda, and Lower Tugela. The larger tribes are divided into two or more sections, each under its own chief and each occupying lands of its own which not infrequently are a considerable distance apart from those of the other sections of the tribe.

The largest tribes are the Abatembu, with six divisions and about 30,000 people; the Amacunu, with three divisions and about 22,000 people; the Amaqwabe, with six divisions and about 20,000 people; and the Amabomvu, with six divisions and about 18,000 people. The first two have their largest divisions in Weenen County, the third in the Lower Tugela Division, and the fourth in Umvoti County. The Abatembu and the Amaqwabe are known to be two of the 94 aboriginal tribes inhabiting Natal before its devastation by Chaka about the year 1812. The other two tribes entered Natal before it became a British colony —probably between the years 1812 and 1843.

The natives in the locations are subject to their own chiefs and indunas or headmen. These again are subject respectively to Resident Magistrates or Administrators of Native Law, to the Secretary for Native Affairs, and to the Governor, who is "Supreme Chief of the Native population." The Government may call out from the locations

men to work for a fair wage on the public roads. Subject to the permission of the authorities families may move from one location to another. Natives who came into the colony subsequent to the formation of the locations are allowed on payment of an annual rent of £1 per hut to settle temporarily on vacant Crown Lands, if they are unable to arrange for living in one of the locations. Many natives live as tenants at various rates of rent on private farms. Twenty-three "mission reserves," containing in all 164,729 acres, are held in trust by various religious societies for the benefit of the natives. All native huts, wherever situated, pay an annual tax to the Government of fourteen shillings each. This sum is in addition to the rent paid for living on Crown Lands or on private farms. The number of the native population is estimated by reckoning four persons on an average for every hut.

The colony is ruled for the Crown and the people by a **Governor appointed by the Queen.** His Excellency is assisted by an **Executive Council** of ten members,—the Chief Justice, the Commandant, the Colonial Secretary, the Colonial Treasurer, the Attorney-General, the Secretary for Native Affairs, the Colonial Engineer, the General Manager of Railways, and two members of the Legislative Council selected by the Governor. Laws for the Government of the colony are made by a **Legislative Council** consisting of 31 members. Twenty-four of the members are elected by the European colonists, five are Government officials and members of the Executive Council, and two are non-officials chosen by the Governor.

A Supreme Court of three judges, a Native High Court, and Divisional Resident Magistrates, administer justice to Europeans and Natives.

The colony is defended by a garrison of about 1,200 Imperial troops, by about 1,300 volunteers, and by about 220 mounted police.

The **Revenue** amounted in 1889 to £1,327,105, derived chiefly from railways, customs, native taxes and rents, mail service, wharf, port, and harbour dues, land sales, telegraphs, stamps, and excise. The **Expenditure** for the same year amounted to £1,146,000. The **Public Debt** is about £8,000,000.

## XIV.—COUNTIES AND TOWNS.

There are 8 counties—4 on the coast and 4 inland. Those on the coast, from south to north, are Alfred, Alexandra, Durban, and Victoria; and those inland are Pietermaritzburg, Umvoti, Weenen, and Klip River. Durban is the smallest county and Pietermaritzburg the largest. The four coast counties differ considerably from the four inland counties in appearance, climate, and productions. The colony is also divided into districts, each under the jurisdiction of a magistrate or an administrator appointed by the Government.

Alfred County, lying between the Umtamvuna and the Umzimkulu, has only one village, **Harding,** in the north-west, near the head waters of the Umzimkulwana. Cattle and horses are bred in the higher parts of the county and maize is grown throughout. A small quantity of timber is cut from the once magnificent natural forests in the Ingeli Mountains. The coast-lands produce sugar, coffee, tea, and tropical fruits in small quantities, but are capable of considerable development. A village, **Port Shepstone,** is laid

out on both banks of the mouth of the Umzimkulu, but its settlement awaits chiefly the success of works for the improvement of the channel from the ocean to the river wharves. About eight miles up the river and lying on the granitic floor of Natal, is a field of crystalline white marble, in parts about a thousand feet thick and extending over a space of thirty square miles. Except for making lime and cement, not much use has yet been made of this valuable outcrop. A tract of about 7,000 acres of coast-land named **Marburg** is occupied by thirty families brought from Norway by the Government in 1882. They till the land and rear cattle and appear to be prosperous.

Alexandra County lies between the Lower Umzimkulu and the Lower Umkomaas. It has only one village, **Umzinto,** in the centre of a sugar-producing district. Tea, coffee, tobacco, and rice are grown in small quantities. Gold is found among the quartz in the broken country inland from the village.

Durban County lies between the Lower Umkomaas and the Lower Umgeni. It contains one town, Durban, and four villages, Pinetown, Bellair, Umgeni, and Isipingo.

Durban, the port of the colony and the natural gate-way of South-Eastern Africa, is a town of great trade and of growing importance. It is built on the north side of the Bay, and as a borough covers a space of about 6,000 acres. It includes the Point with its shipping and busy wharves, and the bush-covered Berea heights overlooking the town and the ocean, and thickly dotted with houses. The naturally sandy roads have been macadamized, and tram-cars connect the Point with the Berea. The streets are wide, and here and there the footpaths are shaded by trees, some of them survivals of "the forest primeval." The two most conspicuous buildings are the Town Hall and the Roman

Catholic Church. The population is 24,000. Of this number about one-half are Europeans, one-quarter natives, and the other quarter Indians.

**Pinetown,** a quiet village, is on a sandy plain about 13 miles by road from Durban, and on the inland edge of the coast region. **New Germany,** about 3 miles to the north-east, is a settlement of thrifty Germans who came originally from Bremen to grow cotton. This industry failed, and they now find Durban and its shipping a good market for the farm and garden produce from their small holdings. About 4 miles to the west of Pinetown is **Mariannhill,** a large mission-settlement of Trappist monks. **Isipingo,** 11 miles from Durban, is the terminus of the south coast railway and the centre of a sugar district. **Adams,** 7 miles further south, on the Amanzamtoti, is an important native educational and industrial settlement belonging to the American Board of Missions.

Victoria County, stretching between the Umgeni and the Tugela, is the chief sugar-producing district in the colony. Tea, coffee, arrowroot, cayenne pepper, and fruit are also grown in small quantities on the coast, and maize is found throughout. Near the mouth of the Umvoti there is an immense "donga"—a fine illustration on a small scale of a table-land being carved into peaks, ridges, ravines and valleys by the levelling action of the weather. There are four villages:—**Verulam,** prettily situated on the south bank of the Umhloti, and founded by Wesleyans from St. Albans—whence its name; **Victoria,** near the river Tongaat; **Umhlali,** with tea plantations; and **Stanger,** about 15 miles from the border of Zululand, and the burial-place of the great Zulu King, Chaka. At **Lindley,** near the Inanda hills in the southern part of the county, there is a large American training-school for native girls. A number

of immigrants from Holland have settled at **New Guelderland** and at **Doesburg,** a few miles north of Stanger.

Pietermaritzburg County contains over 5,000 sq. miles or more than one-fourth of the total land surface. It occupies the south-western part of the colony and lies between the Umzimkulu and the watershed of the Umgeni. Stock-farms are common all through the county, and maize, oats, kafir-corn, and potatoes, are the staple productions. Timber for wagon-making and other purposes is cut from the natural bush, and building-stone is quarried to a small extent. The most populous centres are:—Pietermaritzburg, Richmond, Byrnetown, Stuartstown, Howick, Lidgetton, York, Camperdown, New Hanover, Kirchdorf, Edendale, and Nottingham.

Pietermaritzburg—commonly shortened to Maritzburg—the capital of the colony and 2,218 feet above the sea-level, is named after two famous boer leaders, Pieter Retief and Gert Maritz. It contains as a borough about 44 square miles and is built among hills on the ridge and sides of a gentle slope which forms part of the north bank of the river Umsunduzi. It is the seat of Government, the chief station of the Imperial troops, and an entrepôt for up-country trade. Its dark brown soil, its tile-covered houses, its rose hedges, its trees and its gardens give it the appearance of a large English village. The principal buildings are Government House, the Legislative Council Hall, the Court House, the Town Buildings, the Cathedral, and the College. Its population, including the garrison, is about 16,000. The Europeans number 9,500: the remainder are Natives, Indians, and other coloured races. To the north-west of the city and 1,600 ft. above it is the Town Hill, one of the elevations in the third of the natural terraces rising from the coast.

**Richmond,** 2,890 ft. high, and **Byrnetown** are villages on the Illovo, in the centre of a good agricultural and pastoral district. **Stuartstown,** near the Ixopo, has large sheep-farms in its neighbourhood. **Howick,** 3,439 ft. high, is a health-resort on the Umgeni, and is noted for its falls. **Lidgetton,** 3,952 ft. high, is a settlement in the north-west of the county yet undeveloped, although 40 years ago it promised to rival in prosperity the other villages peopled by Byrne's immigrants. **York,** an agricultural settlement, is 21 miles north of Maritzburg. **Camperdown,** 15 miles to the south-east of Maritzburg, contains a well-tilled stretch of fertile plain. **New Hanover** and **Kirchdorf** are two German settlements—respectively 5 and 9 miles east of York—each with its church, school, and post-office. **Edendale** is a native village 6 miles west of Maritzburg. **Fort Nottingham,** a thriving pastoral district near Spion Kop, owes its name to its having been in former times an encampment of a detachment of the 45th or Nottingham regiment, posted for the protection of the settlers against the raids of those "children of the mist"—the freebooting Bushmen from the caves of the Berg.

Umvoti County, drained by the river of the same name, is the sheep-farming county of the Dutch, and has a soil and climate well adapted for tree cultivation. Gold is found in small quantities in the broken country near the Tugela. The Ehlanzeni and Kranskop districts are noted for their wild scenery. Hot springs, more or less sulphurous, are found in the northern parts of the county. One in the Tugela valley has a temperature of 128°; another near the Ihlimbitwa has a temperature of 101°.

**Greytown,** the only village, is the seat of a magistracy and forms a rallying-point for the farmers of the district.

**Hermannsburg,** 15 miles to the east, is a large Hanoverian Mission Station. At Fort Buckingham, near Kranskop, a stronghold was hastily constructed in 1861 to check a threatened incursion of Zulus.

Weenen County is triangular in shape and slopes northeast to the Tugela, which forms its northern boundary. The rearing of cattle, sheep, and horses is the chief occupation of the farmers. Wheat and other grains grow well wherever the land is irrigated. There are four villages—Estcourt, Weenen, Colenso, and Weston.

**Estcourt** is picturesquely situated near the junction of the Bushman and Little Bushman Rivers.

**Weenen,** the nucleus of a settlement for immigrant farmers, lies in a deep, warm, alluvial, cup-shaped valley, about ten miles from the confluence of the Bushman River and the Tugela. The soil can be irrigated and it produces heavy grain crops, tobacco, and fruit of excellent quality. **Colenso,** a hamlet near the Tugela, was, prior to the erection of a bridge, a compulsory halting-place for northern-bound wagons when the river was in flood. **Weston,** consisting of half-a-dozen houses on the Mooi River, was better known in the coaching days.

Klip River County is an equilateral triangle lying north of the Tugela and forming the northern apex of the colony. It is bounded by the Drakensberg on the west and by the Buffalo River on the east. Coal of good quality is found throughout nearly one-half of the county—from Job's Kop on the south to beyond Newcastle on the north. Stock-raising and wool-growing are the chief occupations of the farmers. Fields of excellent wheat are seen in the western parts of the county, and maize is grown throughout. The towns are Ladysmith, Newcastle, Charlestown, Dundee, and Pomeroy.

**Ladysmith,** 3,284 ft. high, on Klip River, is the third town in the colony. It is an important local centre, and it also stands at the junction of the trade-routes to the Free State and the Transvaal. **Newcastle,** 3,893 ft. high, on the River Incandu, is supported mainly by the wool trade of the district and of the neighbouring parts of the Republics. Good coal is plentiful for miles round the village, which however does not owe its name to its mineral wealth but to the Duke of Newcastle, who was Secretary of State for the Colonies in 1852 and again in 1859. **Charlestown,** 5,386 ft. high, a new township, is 30 miles to the north and the terminus of the Natal line of railway. A few miles to the south of Charlestown is flat-topped Amajuba—the scene in 1881 of the defeat of English troops by the boers and of the death of their commander and Natal's Governor—Sir George Pomeroy Colley. **Dundee,** 4,104 ft. high, is in the centre of an extensive coal-field and is likely to increase considerably in size and importance. **Pomeroy,** the seat of a magistracy, is close to a large native location lying in the angle formed by the Buffalo and the Tugela. **The Gordon Memorial** Mission Station is two miles to the eastward. **Helpmakaar,** a small hamlet about 10 miles to the north, is at the head of the valley leading to the historic Rorke's Drift, gallantly defended by a handful of Englishmen against four thousand Zulus on the 22nd January, 1879.

The remains of small circular stone enclosures are found abundantly in many parts of Weenen, Klip River, and Umvoti Counties. They were evidently kraals for cattle and goats, and they testify to a once teeming native population. Those in the Little Tugela district are generally surrounded by ditches, cut probably to prevent the Bushmen from making a hole in an unguarded part of the wall and stealthily driving off the stock. In the Free State unused

rough stone huts and cattle kraals, similarly constructed to those in Natal, are found in many localities. Close to every hut is a grassy mound composed of ashes and household refuse—a veritable South African "kitchen-midden."

SUMMARY.

## Coast Counties.

1. **Alfred.**—Harding; Port Shepstone; Marburg.
2. **Alexandra.**—Umzinto; North Shepstone.
3. **Durban.**—Durban; Pinetown; Bellair; Umgeni; Isipingo; New Germany; Mariannhill; Adams.
4. **Victoria.**—Verulam; Victoria; Umhlali; Stanger; Lindley; New Guelderland; Doesburg.

## Inland Counties.

5. **Pietermaritzburg.** — Pietermaritzburg; Richmond; Byrnetown; Stuartstown; Howick; Lidgetton; York; Camperdown; New Hanover: Kirchdorf; Edendale; Nottingham.
6. **Umvoti.**—Greytown; Hermannsburg.
7. **Weenen.**—Estcourt; Weenen; Colenso; Weston.
8. **Klip River.**—Ladysmith; Newcastle; Charlestown; Dundee: Pomeroy; Gordon Memorial; Helpmakaar.

## XV.—ROADS.

In Natal traffic has to be carried on entirely by means of roads made through the country. Carriage by water is the easiest and cheapest mode of conveyance, but Natal has no arms of the sea, no lakes, and no navigable rivers. At first

the roads were only tracks made through the veld and over the hills by the wagons of the settler and the trader, but now a length of 3,000 miles of highways is kept in repair by the Government road-parties, and 378 miles of railway connect the chief trade-centres with the Port.

Three main roads diverge from Durban. One follows the south coast, one the north coast, and the third leads inland through Maritzburg and the upland counties to the Overberg States.

**The South Coast Road** leaves Durban by the Umbilo Road, skirts the head of the Bay, passes through the little village of Isipingo, and keeps nearly parallel to the beach all the way to Marburg, four miles on the south side of the Umzimkulu. Very few of the rivers are bridged. All, however, except the Umzimkulu, may be forded on horseback at their ordinary level. Passengers and vehicles are taken over this "great" river by ferry-boats. Except for about 12 miles between Durban and Isipingo, the road is a series of ascents to the hill-tops and descents to the streams. Glimpses of the sea are obtained every few miles. The country between Isipingo and the Umkomaas is occupied as Native Locations and Mission Reserves, and only a little cultivation is seen in this wide stretch of pleasing coast-land. A branch road passes through Adams Mission Station and reaches Maritzburg by way of Stony Hill and the farming districts of New Leeds and Fox Hill. From the hills on the south side of the Umkomaas, beacons may be seen near the beach warning the mariner of the proximity of the Aliwal Shoal, so named because its existence was first reported in 1848 by the master of the ship "Aliwal." At Umzinto a road strikes inland, ascends through the cane-clad Equeefa valley, traverses several native locations, crosses the Hlatenkunga mountain, and reaches Ixopo

by way of the pastoral district of Highflats. At the Umzimkulu, hill and forest, river and sea, are so exquisitely blended that

> "the whole might seem
> The scenery of a fairy dream."

From Marburg the road bends in a north-westerly direction and runs through the middle of Alfred County to Harding, a distance of about 55 miles. At Harding and on the way thither roads branch off to Pondoland and Griqualand East.

**The North Coast Road** crosses the Umgeni by a low-level bridge and runs parallel to the sea through the garden county of Victoria to the Tugela ferry connecting Natal with Zululand. It passes through Umgeni Village, Avoca, Mount Edgcumbe—with the largest sugar-mill in the colony—Verulam, Victoria, Umhlali, Stanger, and New Guelderland. Cultivated hills and valleys are seen from nearly every point in the road. Only one river, the Tongaat, is bridged. On the south bank of the Umvoti is the mission-station of Groutville, whence a road branches off to Maritzburg by way of Noodsberg. On the north side of the river—here about 150 yards wide—there is a sugar-mill established by Government for the benefit of the natives.

**The Main Road Inland** crosses the Berea, passes through Westville, and, as it winds up Cowie's Hill, affords to the left a view of the reservoirs which supply Durban with water from the river Umbilo. Crossing Pinetown plain and ascending Field's Hill, a seven miles' stretch of comparatively flat country brings the traveller to Botha's Hill. The road now runs among swelling heights and opens up some magnificent scenery. Close at hand immense rounded blocks of crystalline granite appear to rest so lightly on the grassy slopes that only a vigorous push seems

needed to topple them into the valley below. They are not however detached masses but only those parts of the bed-rock that are hard enough to withstand for a time the crumbling effects of the elements. A vista of hills and valleys, like a mountainous sea congealed, stretches to the right far away into the wild Inanda country. The long and steep Inchanga hill is next surmounted, and from its top is first seen Zwartkop, the Town Hill, and Otto's Bluff—salient points in the terrace that rises to the north-west of Maritzburg. Table Mountain and rounded Spitzkop stand out clear to the right of the road as it crosses the well-tilled Camperdown flats. About nine miles from Maritzburg the road runs through Thornville, a district studded with mimosa trees and a favourite haunt of elephants when the Dutch laid out the streets of Maritzburg in 1839. After crossing a small stream and climbing the long cutting on its northern bank a plateau is reached overlooking the Capital, four miles distant. The Victoria Bridge, which spans the Umsunduzi, gives entrance to the city.

The Main Road on leaving Maritzburg takes a north-westerly direction as far as Estcourt, 60 miles distant. On its way thither it climbs the Town Hill, part of the Karkloof Range, and the Mooi River Heights, and passes through Howick with its waterfall, Curry's Post with its wooded slopes, and Weston with its undeveloped township and a bridge over the Mooi River. From Estcourt in the bridged valley of the Bushman River two roads branch off, one north-east and the other north-west. The former leads to fertile Weenen and "The Thorns." The other crosses the Blauwkrans River, the Little Tugela, Sterk Spruit, and the Tugela. At the last-named river it divides into two branches, both leading over the Berg into the Free State, that to the left by way of Olivier's Hoek, and the other by

Bezuidenhout's Pass. From Estcourt the main road runs northerly through some thinly-wooded country near the Blauwkrans River and then crosses a plain to Colenso, 20 miles distant. Away to the west is seen a V-shaped summit of the Berg, close to the Tugela waterfall. At Colenso the river is crossed by a lofty bridge. About 12 miles further on, a road goes to the left and joins one from Ladysmith leading over the Berg by Van Reenen's Pass to Harrismith. Another road from Ladysmith runs nearly west and parallel to the Tugela, crosses the Harrismith road, and joins the road leading over Olivier's Hoek Pass. The other part of the main road keeps on northward to Ladysmith, 100 miles from Maritzburg by road. The distance between Ladysmith and Newcastle is about 70 miles. After leaving the stony banks of Klip River the road runs through a plain to Sunday's River, here crossed by a bridge. The ascent of the Biggarsberg now begins. Hills and short flats alternate till the northern neck is reached at the base of One Tree Hill. The Ingagani River is crossed by a bridge, seven miles from Newcastle. From the township a road strikes north-east through the Buffalo to Utrecht in the Transvaal. After crossing the Incandu bridge the main road keeps straight north for about 35 miles to Land's End, the most northerly point in the colony, passing on its way Ingogo Heights, Mount Prospect, Amajuba, and Laing's Nek—all notable in the Boer War of 1881.

From Maritzburg three other main roads diverge. One goes to Newcastle *via* Greytown, one to Ipolela *via* Edendale, and the other to Harding *via* Richmond.

**The Greytown Road** runs in a north-easterly direction for 42 miles to Greytown, by way of Maldon, Albert, Sterkspruit, and Sevenoaks. A branch road leads from the hill above Maldon in a general easterly direction through

Kirchdorf and over the Noodsberg to several points on the North Coast Road. At Greytown two roads branch off, the one to the east to Stanger, and the other to the west through Riet Vlei to Weston. The former passes Hermannsburg, runs through numerous sheep-farms, traverses the rugged Mapumulo, and reaches Stanger by way of the tea-growing district of Kearsney. Between Greytown and Stanger several side roads branch Tugela-wards. The one nearest to Greytown reaches the river by way of the mission station of Ehlanzeni, nestling "*among thorns*" in a warm fertile valley abounding in mimosæ and aloes. After leaving Greytown the main road ascends a long hill, opens up a length of about 35 miles of magnificent "thorn country" in the wide basins of the Mooi and Tugela rivers, and reaches Pomeroy near the large Umsinga native location. It then runs for nine miles to Helpmakaar, whence a road diverges into Zululand by way of Rorke's Drift and Isandhlwana. From the heights of the road in this neighbourhood sweeping views are obtained of both Zululand and Natal. After twenty miles of Biggarsberg uplands Dundee is reached, the central hive of the coal industry. Cross-roads to the north-east and to the south-west lead respectively to the Transvaal by way of Landman's and the Commando Drifts, and to Ladysmith by way of Eland's Laagte. From Dundee to Newcastle, a distance of about 40 miles, the road passes through a coal-bearing but otherwise uninteresting stretch of comparatively flat country.

**The Edendale Road** skirts the south bank of the Umsunduzi, crosses Eland's River and the Umkomaas, and gives communication to Boston—the district lying between them. From Ipolela, 12 miles beyond the Umkomaas, a road branches south-east to Ixopo, and rough tracks and bridle-paths lead to Bushman's Neck, and the head waters of the Umzimkulu.

**The Richmond Road** passes Fox Hill and Richmond Road railway-stations on the main line, crosses the Umlaas River and reaches Richmond on the Illovo, 25 miles from Maritzburg. About eight miles beyond Richmond the road crosses the deep, wide,tropical-looking valleys of the Umkobeni and the Umkomaas, and then runs for about 16 miles to Stuartstown near the Ixopo River, the seat of a magistracy and in the middle of a good sheep farming district. At the Umzimknlu, 14 miles distant, a ferry connects Natal with Cape Colony. The road now goes through Griqnaland East for about 28 miles and enters Natal again about two miles from Harding.

There are many other roads, more or less defined, leading to every district and to every farm-house, and bridle-tracks and foot-paths cross the country in all directions.

The **Railways** belong to the Government. The main line extends from the Port to the northern extremity of the colony at Charlestown, a distance of 304 miles. A branch line, 36 miles long, connects Ladysmith with the Free State railway at Van Reenen's Pass, and another line runs from Biggarsberg to the Dundee coal fields, a distance of seven miles. From Durban a line runs south to Isipingo, 11¼ miles, and another north to Verulam, 19¼ miles. All the lines are single and narrow gange—3 feet 6 inches. Some of the gradients and curves are very severe. In places the train has to ascend one yard for every thirty yards it travels and sometimes it has to go round part of a circle 200 yards in diameter. Between Durban and Maritzburg it has frequently to make its steepest climb and go round its sharpest curve at the same time. The surface of the country is so wavy that only 47 miles of the 304 of the main line are perfectly level. All the rest is either up or down, and every train from Durban has actually to be pulled up a

total vertical height of 13,350 feet or more than $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles before it reaches the station at Charlestown, 5,386 feet above the level of the sea.

**The Telegraph Wire**, which may be called an air-way, connects all the centres of the Colony with each other and with Zululand, the Transvaal, the Free State, and Cape Colony. Two submarine cables afford the means of communicating in a few hours with any part of the civilised world. One—**the Eastern Cable**—stretches from Durban to Aden by way of Delagoa Bay, Mozambique, and Zanzibar; the other—**the Western Cable**—runs from Capetown through the Atlantic by way of Port Nolloth, Benguela, Lagos, Sierra Leone, Senegal, Cape Verde, The Canaries, and Madeira.

## XVI.—COMMERCE.

Durban is the water-gateway not only of Natal but of several important parts of the neighbouring states and territories. This geographical position makes Natal the natural carrier to these inland districts. She endeavours to maintain and to increase this transport-trade by means of a low customs tariff, harbour improvements, and a railway to the chief trade-routes on her northern borders. All the goods imported are not therefore for the use of the people of Natal, and all the goods exported have not been produced by them.

In 1889 goods of the value of £4,500,000 were landed at the Port from 555 ships, and goods of the value of £1,700,000 were exported. England's annual imports are about £350,000,000 in value, and her exports about £300,000,000.

We cannot tell the amount or value of the imports that go to our neighbours, but the proportion we know must be

large, as no less than seventy per cent. of the total revenue for 1889 was derived from customs duties and railway carriage. It is estimated that exports by sea of the value of £1,000,000 were produced in the colony, but no record is kept of those so produced and sent to the inland states.

About four-fifths of the imports come from England. The rest comes chiefly from Australia, India, China, the Baltic ports, the United States, and South America. From England we get haberdashery; millinery; clothing; ironmongery and hardware; machinery; furniture; oilmen's stores; wines, spirits, and beer; saddlery; stationery and books; and manufactured goods of all kinds. Flour comes from Australia; tea, rice, bags, and coolie necessaries from India and China; timber from the Baltic; agricultural machinery, paraffin, and building materials from the United States; and coffee from South America.

The exports consist chiefly of raw materials and one or two articles of food—wool, sugar, hides, angora hair, skins, horns, fruit, bark, arrowroot, rum, ostrich feathers, tea, and gold.

## XVII.—NAMES OF PLACES.

History is bound up in the names of places. Just as we gather from a map of England that Celts, Romans, Saxons, and Normans have all had a hand in its making, so the names of places in Natal bear evidence that at various times the land has been visited or inhabited by native races, and by at least three European peoples—the Portuguese, the Dutch, and the English.

Natal, the Portuguese word for "*Christmas*," will record for all time the people who named the colony and the day of its discovery.

The short period of Dutch dominance, as well as the memory of two notable Boers, are chronicled in the names of the capital and its streets. Many names in the uplands bear witness to Dutch occupation. Weenen, or the place of "*Weeping*," and Moord or "*Murder*" Spruit, commemorate dark scenes in the history of the early settlers, when men, women, and children fell beneath the ruthless assegais of the impis of Dingaan.

The Biggarsberg takes its name from a common occurrence of South African travel. Biggar, one of the English settlers at the Bay, accompanied the commando against Dingaan in November, 1838. It was the rainy season, and his wagon was upset in a mud-hole on a hill close to the present line of railway a few miles south of the Biggarsberg station. The farm on which the mishap occurred was afterwards called "Biggar's Gat," and the Englishman's name was in time extended to the whole of the "berg."

That counties and towns largely bear English names is significant of the progress of population and civilisation since Natal became part of Greater Britain.

The names of Governors of the Cape, which appear in Durban, Greytown, Ladysmith, and Fort Napier, are a reminder of the short period of vassalage to our older neighbour.

Loyalty to the reigning House is shewn in Victoria, Alexandra, and Alfred counties.

Governors of Natal have bestowed their names on Weston, Westville, Pinetown, Keate, Pomeroy, and Charlestown.

The memory of other colonial men of mark is preserved in Shepstone, Colenso, Stanger, Sutherland, Harding, Lindley, Adams, and Groutville.

Very little is known of the countless generations of black men who have lived and died in Natal, but they have left

their mark in imperishable language on river, stream, and mountain.

Nearly all the leading features of outward nature in the colony bear native names—names given to them originally on account of some striking aspect of shape, or colour, or appearance. Some of these descriptive words are "fossil poetry." He was a man gifted with imagination who gave its name to Tintwa, the mountain-peak first "*touched*" by the soft rainy clouds from the south-west; to the Umkomaas, "*the gatherer of waters*"; to Ǹ ahwaqa, the "*wrinkled frowning*" mountain; and to Indumeni, "*the thunderer*"—from the echoes which roll around it. The native mind must have been awed by the loftiness of Cathkin, the peak above all others in Natal

> "Who to the stars uncrowns his majesty,
> Making the heaven of heavens his dwelling-place."

Its height, "out-topping knowledge," gave it the name of Umdedelele, the mountain which "*must be left alone.*" The mountain-wall which "heaves high its forehead bare" along Natal's western boundary is known to the natives as Kahlamba, its jagged peaks and mighty bosses seeming as if they had been recklessly "*tossed or hurled down*" by Titanic hands. The loneliness and desolation of this mountain region so impressed the imaginations of the Dutch pioneers that they named it the Drakensberg or "habitation of *dragons.*"

The names, too, given by the Dutch colonists to up-country hills and streams have generally been suggested by some characteristic of position or appearance.

Spion Kop is the mountain from whose summit an extensive "*view*" is obtained: Blauw Krans is "*blue cliffs,*" from the colour of the shale: Klip River is named from its

"*stony*" bed and banks: Doorn Kop is the "*hill of thorns*": Sterk Spruit is the "*strong*" stream: and Mooi River is the "*beautiful*" river.

The fitness of these names is evident enough, but there are many, such as Tugela, the "*startling*" river, and Noodsberg, the "*dangerous*" mountain, whose appropriateness cannot now be so easily discerned. The names remain: their significance has been lost in the mists of time.

## XVIII.—THE NEIGHBOURING STATES.

Natal is surrounded on her landward borders by Pondoland, Cape Colony, Basutoland, the Orange Free State, the Transvaal, and Zululand.

PONDOLAND, on Natal's southern boundary, is practically two independent native states governed by separate chiefs under British protection. It lies between the Umtamvuna and Umtata rivers and between the Indian Ocean and Griqualand East. It is about one-third the size of Natal and contains a population of about 200,000 natives. The surface resembles that of Natal. The largest river is the Umzimvubu or St. John's. It rises near Bushman's Neck and with its tributaries drains the whole of Griqualand East and the western and higher districts of Pondoland.

The English district of **Port St. John's** is a strip of territory one mile wide running from the mouth of the river for twelve miles up its western bank. The village of the same name—with a white population of about a hundred—is at the mouth of the river and is about midway between Durban and East London. Umtata, just over the

south-western bonndary line, is the nearest town of Cape Colony. Shawbury and Palmerton are the chief mission-stations.

"For a breach of treaty arrangements Umqikela ceased in 1878 to be recognised as paramount chief of the Pondos, and the sovereignty of the port and estnary of St. John's River was vested in Her Majesty's Government. The port was annexed to Cape Colony in 1884. Umqikela died in 1887, and in 1888 his son Sigcau was elected to succeed him as chief of East Pondoland. A Resident Commissioner in Pondoland was appointed in July 1888. West Pondoland is nnder the chief Nquiliso. A small strip of his territory at the mouth of St. John's River was acquired by the Cape Government for £1,000." (Colonial Office List for 1890.)

CAPE COLONY—the premier possession of England in the Dark Continent—is the oldest and largest of the South African States. It is eleven times the size of Natal, and it stretches from Cape Agulhas to the Kalahari Desert and from the Indian Ocean to the Atlantic. Its north-eastern province of Griqnaland East forms the south-western boundary of Natal.

When the first Dutch colonists sent by the Dutch East India Company arrived at the Cape in 1652, the land was peopled by Hottentots in the south, Bushmen in the north, and Kafirs to the north-east. An important addition to the numbers of the Dutch settlers was made in 1688 by the arrival of a band of Huguenot refugees driven from France by the Revocation of the Edict of Nantes. The misgovernment of the Company and its vexatious interference with trade and farming caused many of the boers to trek in 1780 as far as the Great Fish River. There for the

first time they came into conflict with the warlike Kafirs. The Dutch East India Company fell to pieces in 1795, and Cape Colony was taken possession of by the English at the request of the Stadtholder when Holland was seized by the French. In 1803 it was again given over to Holland, but it was finally seized by England in 1806 on the renewal of the war in Europe. It was formally ceded to England by the Treaty of Paris in 1815. Tranquillity was secured on the Cape frontier only by frequent and sanguinary wars with the border kafirs, their power being ultimately crushed in the outbreak of 1877. The exodus of boers from the Cape in 1834-1837 was an epoch in South African history and led to the colonization of Natal, the Orange Free State and the Transvaal.

The Governor, who is appointed by the Queen, is aided by ministers responsible to the people as represented by the local parliament The population numbers 350,000 Europeans—mainly English in the eastern provinces and Dutch in the western—and about 1,150,000 natives. England maintains a naval station at Simon's Bay and defends it by a garrison of 1,300 Imperial troops stationed at Cape Town and Wynberg. The colonists must however depend on their own forces for protection against the natives. They comprise 650 Cape Police, 800 Cape Mounted Rifles, and 4,400 volunteers. The wealth of the country consists in its sheep, its cattle, its ostriches, its wines, its diamonds, its grain, its copper, and its forests.

The high lands of the interior include the Great Karoo plateau, as large as Natal and lying between the two chief mountain chains. The lower chain runs nearest to the sea and consists of several short ranges cut by coast rivers. The higher and inland chain forms the southern limit of the great basin of the Orange River. It contains, from

west to east, the Roggeveld Berg; the Nieuwveld Berg; the Winter Berg; the Sneeuw Berg, with Mt. Compass, 7,800 feet high; and the Storm Berg. This main chain unites to the eastward with the southern ridges, and finally merges into the Drakensberg of Natal. The middle and northern parts of the colony are watered by the Orange River and its southern affluents: the coast districts by the Umtata, the Bashee, the Great Kei, the Buffalo, the Great Fish River, Sunday River, the Gamtoos, the Gauritz, the Breede, the Great Berg, and the Olifant.

The chief towns, in the order of their size, are **Cape-town,** the capital, at the foot of Table Mountain, 3,582 feet high, famous for its observatory and the variety of heaths and geraniums found in the neighbourhood; **Kimberley,** the centre of the diamond-digging industry; **Beaconsfield,** also a diamond centre, close to Kimberley; **Port Elizabeth,** on Algoa Bay, a thoroughly English town and the chief harbour for foreign trade; **Grahamstown,** with a fine climate and ostrich farms; **The Paarl,** with vineyards; **East London,** with an exposed roadstead, the port of "King" and the border districts; **Graaff Reinet,** "the gem of the Karoo;" **King,** or **King William's Town,** the centre of a large and wealthy native area, and an important commercial depôt; **Uitenhage,** an old Dutch town; **Stellenbosch,** noted for its schools and as being the head-quarters of the Dutch Reformed Church; **Worcester,** an important railway depôt; and **Queenstown,** a centre of mission work, in a good farming district, and near grand mountain scenery.

BASUTOLAND, or Lesuto as the natives call it, is half the size of Natal and is the Switzerland of South Africa. It is a land of table-topped mountains and deep winding

valleys, of magnificent scenery and rugged grandeur—"geographically speaking, the key-stone of the South African structure, the foundation-head of its water-system, the summit of its surface."

It is bounded by Natal on the east; by Cape Colony on the south-east, south, and south-west; and by the Orange Free State on the west and north. Its mountains are the Drakensberg, the Maluti, and the Molappo ranges, with numerous spurs. The whole of the country is drained by the Orange River and its large affluents the Cornet and the Caledon. It is well watered, has a delicious climate, is "the granary of South Africa," and has magnificent pasture-lands.

It owes its position as the richest and most civilized native state in South Africa to its great chief **Moshesh**. In the time of Chaka's wars, the peaceful Bechuana people occupying its valleys were attacked by refugee tribes from Natal, who filled the land with murder and pillage. Moshesh defied and finally repulsed these robber hordes from north and east, and welded the scattered and miserable Basuto people into a strong and united nation. Crafty and able in council as well as strong in foray, he listened with attentive respect to the advice of the French missionaries who had settled close by his mountain fastness of Thaba Bosigo about the year 1830. They told him to avoid war if possible, but if he were attacked to defend himself and to make friends with the white man. But with the boers of the Free State Moshesh was never at peace. To aid the boers an English force under Sir George Cathcart, the Crimean hero, attacked the Basutos in 1852, but without success. The war went on till 1868, when the old chief and his people were taken under the protection of the Cape Government. Moshesh died in 1869, and his favourite son,

Letsea, is now paramount chief. When the Cape Government decreed a general disarmament of natives in 1880, the Basutos refused to give up their guns, and colonial troops were sent against them in vain. They kept their arms and their freedom, and are now under direct Imperial protection. Moshesh's wish is fulfilled. His people "rest and live under the large folds of the flag of England."

The natives number about 180,000, and the Europeans not more than 1,000. The country is governed for the Crown through the High Commissioner for the benefit of the natives, and European settlement is prohibited.

Its trade is almost entirely with Cape Colony and the Orange Free State. It exports grain, cattle, and wool, and imports blankets, ploughs, saddlery, clothing, and other manufactured goods.

**Maseru,** the capital, has a population of 600, of whom only 30 are Europeans. **Thaba Bosigo** is the "great place" of the chief.

The Dutch Republic of the ORANGE FREE STATE occupies the greater part of the upper plateau which lies in the huge fork formed by the Vaal and the Orange rivers. It is bounded on the east by Natal and Basutoland; on the south by the Orange River, which separates it from Cape Colony; on the west by Griqualand West; and on the north by the Transvaal, from which it is separated nearly throughout by the Vaal River. It is about three times the size of Natal, and has an average elevation of nearly 5,000 feet. The Witte Bergen is the chief of several mountain ranges which run through the part of the country nearest to the Drakensberg frontier. Nearly the whole of the surface, however, but more especially the western parts, is occupied by wide sweeping plains broken here and there by

abrupt flat-topped hills. The land slopes westward and southward to the Vaal and its parent stream, the Orange, into which ultimately all the running water in the country finds its way. The chief rivers are the Wilge, the Vet, the Modder, and the Caledon.

When the emigrant farmers crossed the Orange from the Cape in 1834 in search of a new home, the great plains west of the Caledon were inhabited by various Bechuana tribes. The most powerful of these were the Basutos under Moshesh. Half-caste Hottentots and Griquas under Adam Kok and Waterboer occupied the region along both sides of the Vaal near its junction with the Orange. The main body of the farmers went on into Natal, but some "squatted" along the Vaal, the Vet, and the Modder rivers. When British sovereignty was proclaimed over Natal in 1843, many of the farmers left and rejoined their countrymen over the Berg. The boers were not long in coming into collision with the Bechuanas and Griquas, in whose land they had so unceremoniously settled themselves down. Might was right in those days, and scenes of confusion and bloodshed were of daily occurrence. To restore order and to ensure protection to both natives and farmers, British rule was declared over the Orange River territory in 1845, and a British Resident stationed at Bloemfontein. Some discontented boers under Andries Pretorius broke into open revolt in 1848 and proclaimed a republic. Sir Harry Smith, with his usual promptitude, at once crossed the Orange and marched against the Dutch commando stationed at Boomplaats, half-way between the Orange River and Bloemfontein. There was a short and sharp contest, and the Dutchmen with their leader Pretorius retreated across the Vaal, and there founded the Transvaal Republic. The constant disputes and wars between Moshesh and the boers

about their boundary line involved the Cape Government in endless trouble, and when Sir George Cathcart undertook a campaign against the Basutos with indifferent success, the English Government resolved to give up this seemingly valueless and troublesome possession, much against the wishes of many of the residents. In 1854 the Orange Free State Republic was established. In consequence of a dispute about his land, Adam Kok, the Griqua chief, and his people were removed to a tract of country between Pondoland and the Drakensberg south of Natal, and now called Griqualand East. The Republic had almost continual wars with Moshesh till 1868, when the Basutos were taken under British protection. When diamonds were discovered between the Vaal and the Modder rivers, the Free State claimed the territory. Waterboer, the Griqua chief, who lived there with his tribe, also claimed the land and petitioned to be taken under English protection. Accordingly in 1871, the Diamond Fields, afterwards called Griqualand West, were annexed and now form a province of Cape Colony. A solatium of £90,000 was given to the Free State in settlement of all its claims.

The population numbers about 70,000 Europeans and about 75,000 natives. The proportion of whites to natives is greater in the Free State than in any other part of South Africa. The country is governed by a President elected by the people every five years. He is assisted by an Executive Council of five members, and by a Legislative Council or "Volksraad" of 56 members. The latter are chosen by the people every four years. All the European men in the country with but few exceptions are liable to be called on for military service.

A few diamonds are found near the south-western boundary, and grain is extensively grown in the eastern districts; but sheep, goats, cattle, and horses are the principal sources of the country's prosperity.

The chief towns are **Bloemfontein,** the capital, an English-looking and English-speaking town, and a resort for invalids; **Harrismith,** 5,336 ft. high, an English town, a sanatorium, and the largest trade-centre in the State, near the Natal border; **Boshoff,** a health resort in a pastoral district near the Diamond Fields; **Kronstadt,** in the north-west, in a bush country formerly the home of immense herds of blesbokken; **Winburg,** with grain, sheep, and cattle farms, near the centre; **Bethlehem,** west of Harrismith, beautifully situated in a grain-producing district, with large Durban trade; **Rouxville,** with sheep and cattle farms, healthily situated on the main road from Aliwal North to Basutoland; **Smithfield,** a prosperous village near the Caledon, in a good farming district; **Fauresmith,** in a thriving pastoral district near the Jagersfontein diamond mines; and **Ladybrand,** near the Basuto boundary.

THE TRANSVAAL REPUBLIC lies "*across the Vaal*" River and north of Natal. It stretches from Zululand, Natal, and the Free State on the south to the curving Limpopo on the north; and from Swazi Land and the Lebombo Mountains on the east to Bechuanaland on the west. It is about seven times larger than Natal and its surface has an average elevation of over 4,000 ft. Three mountain ranges, more or less continuous and with numerous spurs, run westward from the eastern border, and detached ranges are found in many other parts of the country. The land slopes in wide plains in three directions—north to the Limpopo,

south to the Vaal, and east to the sea. A plateau, called the Hooge Veld, extends through the whole breadth of the state and forms the watershed between the wide basin of the Limpopo—drained by its tributary, the Olifants River—and the smaller basin of the Vaal. The chief streams which water the eastern and remaining part of the country are King George's River—formed by the Sabi, the Crocodile, and the Komati;—the Maputa, with its tributary the Pongola; and the upper waters of the White Umfolosi.

The peaceful Bechuana tribes who originally inhabited the land north of the Vaal were attacked and scattered about 1830 by the warriors of Moselekatse, the renegade general of Chaka. Six or seven years later he in turn was forced to flee north of the Limpopo before a commando of Dutch boers under their great leader, Hendrik Potgieter. Andries Pretorius, the conqueror of Dingaan, joined the Republic after the battle of Boomplaats in 1848. The independence of the Republic established by the farmers was acknowledged by the British Crown in the Sand River Convention of 1852, and Marthinus Wessels, son of Andries Pretorius, was elected first President in 1855. The most remarkable section in the "Grondwet" or code of laws passed in 1858, in force to this day, is that "the people will admit of no equality of persons of colour with white inhabitants neither in State nor Church." There was much internal strife among the various parties of the boers themselves as well as almost continual wars with the natives on the northern and eastern borders, and in 1876 a commando sent to attack Sekukuni, chief of the Bapidi, living south of the Olifants River, was utterly routed. This humiliating defeat, joined to an empty exchequer, a ruined credit, and an unpopular government, induced many of the Transvaal residents to look to England for help, and in April, 1877,

the country was annexed to the British Crown by Sir Theophilus Shepstone. The majority of the boers, however, disliked British rule. This feeling was aggravated by the refusal of the English Government to grant them representative institutions, by their distrust of an unsympathetic governor, Sir Owen Lanyon, and by the appointment of English officials to Government posts. Hostilities broke out in 1879, when the 94th Regiment was attacked on the march at Bronkhorst Spruit, 40 miles from Pretoria. A Republic had been previously proclaimed with Kruger, Joubert, and Pretorius at the head of affairs. The boers were everywhere victorious. Sir George Colley, the Governor of Natal, marched an English force towards the Transvaal to relieve the beleaguered towns, but was defeated successively at Laing's Nek, at Ingogo, and on the top of Amajuba, where he fell with many of his men under the deadly fire of the boers. Large reinforcements were sent out from England, but hostilities were never renewed. The independence of the Transvaal Republic, with the Queen as suzerain, was, for the second time, acknowledged by England in 1880. A British resident has since then represented the English Government at Pretoria. A sudden change in the fortunes of the Transvaal occurred in 1886 when gold was discovered to exist in payable quantities over a vast portion of its surface. The exchequer of the republic is now full to repletion, and the great influx of Englishmen to the gold-fields bids fair to introduce a more liberal element into the conduct of its affairs.

The population consists of, probably, 150,000 Europeans and 750,000 natives. Nearly one-half of the former are of English origin and are engaged in mining and in trade. Sheep and cattle rearing and wheat growing form the chief occupations of the boers. The country is governed by a

State President elected by the people every five years. The President is assisted by an Executive Council of five members and a Legislative Council of 41 members. The latter are elected by the people every four years. All the European men in the country, with a few exceptions, are liable to be called on for military service.

The principal towns are—**Pretoria**, the capital, 4,450 feet high, picturesquely situated on a hill-girdled plain, with about 12,000 inhabitants; **Johannesburg,** a city of to-day, owing its position as the second town in South Africa to the magnetic influence of the Witwatersrand gold field; **Potchefstroom,** the seat of Government prior to 1863, on the main highway through the Transvaal, and the scene of some stirring events in the history of the state; **Barberton,** the business centre of the De Kaap gold-fields and only a few years old; **Heidelberg,** a healthy, rapidly rising town, with valuable gold mines in its vicinity; **Klerksdorp,** an old town acquiring new life by the gold discoveries; **Lydenburg,** near which gold was first discovered and successfully mined; **Krugersdorp** — formerly Paardekraal — a new township, 18 miles west of Johannesburg, and in the middle of a number of gold-bearing properties; **Utrecht,** about 30 miles from Newcastle, with business connections with Durban; and **Vryheid,** a good trade-centre and the chief town of the district taken by the Boers from the Zulus after the overthrow of Cetywayo.

ZULULAND lies to the north-east of Natal and is separated from it by the Tugela and its tributary the Buffalo, up to the junction of the Blood River with the latter. It is bounded on the south and south-west by Natal; on the north-west by the Blood River, which separates it from the Utrecht division of the Transvaal; on the north-

centre by Vryheid, the part of the Transvaal lately known as the New Republic; on the north by Amatongaland; and on the east by the Indian Ocean. Its area is 8,900 square miles—less than half that of Natal. Its surface is hilly and broken and is drained to the ocean by the Umhlatoos, the Umfolosi, and many small coast streams.

Its native population is estimated at 140,000. There are about 550 Europeans, chiefly officials, missionaries, traders, and miners. The natives grow maize and kafir-corn, and possess large herds of cattle. Every native hut pays an annual tax of 14s. to the Government. **Etshowe** is the seat of Government, and the head-quarters of the Imperial troops. It is connected by wagon-road with Rorke's Drift.

The Amazulu, who give their name to Zululand, were, at the beginning of this century, a weak and despised people —"tobacco-sellers" to the more powerful tribes around them. They were raised from the dust by the ability and military genius of their chief, Chaka, the Attila of South Africa, who in twenty years conquered every tribe from the Maputa to the Umzimvubu and incorporated most of them with the Zulu nation. He was assassinated and succeeded by his brother Dingaan in 1828. He, in his turn, met a violent death at the hands of the Amaswazi, to whom he fled for refuge in 1839 when defeated by a mixed force of Dutch farmers and rebellious Zulus under his brother Umpande. The chieftainship of the Zulus was bestowed on Umpande by the boers, and his reign was peaceful except for the distractions caused by disputes between his sons, Cetywayo and Umbulazi. In a battle at the Tugela, Umbulazi and thousands of his followers were slain by Cetywayo, who, in 1861, was formally recognised by the Natal Government as his father's successor. Umpande died in 1872, and in 1873, Sir Theophilus Shepstone, with an imposing retinue, went into Zululand and crowned Cetywayo King of the Zulus.

The military system of Chaka was faithfully maintained by the new king, and was a continual menace to his white neighbours. The annexation of the Transvaal in 1877 transferred to the English a boundary dispute which had long existed between Cetywayo and the boers, and relations between the Zulus and the English Government became very strained. The king was accused of violating his coronation oath in several particulars, and thirty days were allowed him for repentance. He sent no reply, and Lord Chelmsford with a large force marched into Zululand in January, 1879. After some disastrous reverses to the English troops, Cetywayo was defeated and taken prisoner, and the dreaded military power of the Zulus was at an end. The country was divided into 13 districts, each governed by an independent chief, subordinate only to the Resident Commissioner. Cetywayo was banished to the Cape, but was ultimately restored under restrictions to part of his former kingdom. There he died in 1884. Some boers from the Transvaal took possession of the north-west portion of Zululand shortly afterwards and named it the New Republic. Its independence was recognised by England in 1886, and it became part of the Transvaal in 1888. It was found that the partition of Zululand into separate districts under kinglets was not satisfactory, and in the cause of peace and progress Zululand was declared British territory in 1887. The natives have now quietly settled down to pastoral and agricultural pursuits. They are governed by magistrates under a Resident Commissioner, who is responsible to a Governor appointed by the Queen. The Governor of Natal is at present also Governor of Zululand. Dinizulu, the son and successor of Cetywayo, was found guilty of high treason in 1889, and was sentenced to ten years' imprisonment. He was banished to historic St. Helena along with two chiefs who also were implicated in the rebellion.

# THE STORY.

# CONTENTS.

# THE STORY.

## CHAPTER I.

*THE SECRET OF THE CAPE.*

### The Christmas Land.

The story of this land begins on the 25th of December 1497, and the first persons connected with it are some storm-tossed Portuguese sailors.

On that day, nearly four hundred years ago, three small vessels sailed slowly up the coast past the Bluff of Natal. They were the **St. Gabriel,** the **St. Raphael,** and the **Berrio,** all belonging to the kingdom of Portugal, and worthy of remembrance as the first ships ever known to have sailed into these waters. Stretched before the eyes of their wearied crews, under a summer sky, were the wooded mass of the Bluff, the lake-like Bay, and the shore and hills beyond adorned with verdure. It was a land of exceeding loveliness, but no European had ever before gazed on its beauties, or heard the "league-long roller thundering" on its shore.

In honour of the day on which he sighted the land, the Portuguese commander, **Vasco da Gama**, named it **Natal,** or "Christmas."

Whence had these mariners come, and whither were they bound?

## A New Way to India.

Before the fifteenth century, the eastern and western coasts of Africa were nnknown to Europeans. Asiatic sailors traded in the Red Sea and for some distance down the east coast, but the sonthern limit of the Dark Continent remained a mystery. There is a legend that the **Phœnicians**, the ancient people whose merchants were princes, had circnmnavigated Africa, sailing sonth from the Red Sea and returning by the Pillars of Hercnles. If they ever accomplished this voyage, no account of it survives except the vague tradition.

The two Repnblics of **Venice** and **Genoa** had grown wealthy and powerful by their trade with India. Bnt the "pearl and gold," the silks and spices, of the gorgeous East could be conveyed to Europe only by a toilsome and expensive journey in caravans across the Asian deserts. Another and easier path to India was therefore earnestly sought for, and it was sought for by sea. From their geographical position as outposts of the European continent, **Spain** and **Portugal** were the nations chiefly stirred by the new-born spirit of enterprise. The improvements in the art of navigation, especially the invention of the "mariner's compass," greatly aided the cause of maritime exploration. The sailor could now steer boldly forth into the great deep, sure of an nnerring guide over the waste of waters.

## The Dark Continent.

The princes of Portugal during the fifteenth century were untiring in their endeavours to find a passage round the southern point of Africa into the Indian Ocean. Ex-

ploring vessels sent out by them discovered successively Cape Nun, Madeira, Cape Bojador, Cape Blanco, Cape Verde, and the Gambia. In 1484, **Diego Cano** had reached as far as the **River Congo**.

A voyage to the Cape nowadays does not mean hardship and adventure. The ocean highway is as well known as Cheapside, and the journey can be made in a steamer like a floating hotel. But they were brave men who first sailed into these unknown seas to encounter winds and waves of which they knew nothing. To them, with their small and fragile vessels and their rude appliances for navigation, the perils of waters were very real. Such an intrepid mariner was **Bartholomew Diaz,** who in 1486 wrested the secret of the water-way to India from the mysterious ocean.

## Diaz and Columbus.

**Diaz** with two caravels and a store-ship succeeded in reaching and passing the Cape, but he did not see it. This brave sailor not only encountered violent storms, but had to contend with mutiny among his men. He coasted a thousand miles of land never before seen by Europeans, and on an islet in Algoa Bay, ever since called St. Croix, he erected a stone cross in token of his having taken possession of the land in the name of the Portuguese King. There the sailors were clamorous for the return of the expedition to Portugal. Diaz persuaded them to sail two or three days longer in the hope that he might receive some encouragement to proceed in an easterly course. But nothing was discovered except the mouth of a river which was named Do Infante from the name of the captain who leaped first on shore. This was probably the **Great Fish River**. From this point Diaz turned back. On his homeward voyage he saw the headland which forms the south-western extremity

of Africa. From the rough weather experienced when doubling it, Diaz named it "Cape of all the Storms." King John II., with happier augury, called it the **"Cape of Good Hope."**

Six years later, in 1492, **Christopher Columbus,** by direction of the Court of Spain, sought a western route across the Atlantic to the Indian spice-islands. He discovered America instead, and threw open a **New World** to Spain and to Europe. To **Portugal** was left the achievement of opening up **South Africa** and **India** to European enterprise.

## Vasco da Gama.

The encouraging discoveries of Diaz were not followed up till 1497, when another and successful attempt was made to find India by way of the Cape. Three vessels and a store-ship, each about 125 tons burden, were specially built for the voyage, and **Vasco da Gama,** a skilled navigator, was entrusted with the command. The small squadron, manned by 160 sailors, left Lisbon on the 8th of July, 1497. Its departure was witnessed by thousands of people and invested with all the pomp and dignity which Royalty and the Church could bestow. **King Manuel** himself presented to Da Gama the standard he was to unfurl on unknown shores; and the priests sang anthems and offered up prayers for the safety and success of the mariners. For the Portuguese princes wished not only to extend their commerce, but also to spread the religion of the Cross in the far East and so check the growing power of Mohammedanism.

## Prester John.

King Manuel gave Da Gama directions to search for Prester John and the King of Calicut. In the twelfth and

thirteenth centuries it was believed in Europe that a Christian king named **Prester** (or Priest) **John** ruled over a vast kingdom in the centre of Asia. But long before Da Gama sailed, the local habitation of this fabled monarch had been transferred to somewhere in Eastern Africa. The riches and magnificence of Prester John and the strange and marvellous things to be found in his dominions could have been equalled only in Fairyland. There was an underground stream whose sands were gems. Monstrous ants that dug for gold were found there, and the salamander, a worm which lived in fire. In this wonderful country were pebbles which restored sight and conferred invisibility; a sea of sand; and a river of stones. Prester John possessed a magic mirror in which he could see everything that happened in his dominions. When he went to battle, he had for standards thirteen great crosses of gold and jewels. Each cross was followed by 10,000 knights and 100,000 footmen. It was natural that King Manuel should be desirous of gaining the friendship of this Christian potentate, in whose existence he implicitly believed. Da Gama never discovered Prester John. He found Calicut, but the phantom king eluded his quest.

## India by Sea.

Da Gama, like Diaz, had to contend with rough weather and with discontent among his crew. It took him four months to reach St. Helena Bay, 90 miles north of Table Mountain. Shortly after leaving the Bay, a terrific storm assailed the ships, and the sailors refused to go further. The mutiny was subdued, and the Cape was rounded in fine weather. After touching at what is now Mossel Bay and burning the store-ship which had been disabled, **Da Gama** with his three vessels proceeded north-eastwards along the

coast. On **Christmas Day,** 170 days out from Lisbon, he passed the bold headland of the Bluff. The discovery of **Natal** is thus associated with one of the memorable voyages of the world—the voyage which opened up India and the East to European enterprise. Da Gama landed at various places on the east coast. At **Melinda** he secured the services of an Indian pilot, who guided his small fleet across the Indian Ocean. **Calicut** was reached on the 20th of May, 1498, and the great problem of a sea-route to India was solved. The possessions of the Portuguese on the east coast of Africa all date from this period.

## The Lusiad.

No poet sang the achievements of Diaz or Columbus. Da Gama was more fortunate. He is one of the chief heroes of the **Lusiad**, the national poem which recites in lofty language the valorous deeds of the people of Lusitania or Portugal. His great voyage round the Cape is depicted in charming and patriotic verse. **Camoens,** the writer of the Lusiad, himself sailed to India in 1553, and was thus able to describe from experience the storms and adventures to be met with in the world of waves. From his word-pictures we gather that the dangers and hardships attendant on doubling the "Cape of Torments" had deeply impressed the imaginations of the early Portuguese navigators. The wrath of the elements seemed to these superstitious sailors something more than earthly. Camoens calls "spirits from the vasty deep" to guard the Secret of the Cape. The giant Adamastor, the Spirit of the Storm, appears to Da Gama, and threatens the Portuguese with "direful woes" should they persist in invading his "drear domain":—

> "Each year thy shipwrecked sons shalt thou deplore,
> Each year thy sheeted masts shall strew my shore."

## Perestrello.

For nearly a century after Da Gama's voyage no Portuguese ship visited the Land of Natal. Vessels bound to India took a more direct course than by sailing up the east coast of Africa, and those going to Sofala and Mozambique made the run without a break from St. Helena. The Portuguese made no attempt to establish any station south of Delagoa Bay, and their ivory traders never penetrated beyond the Lagoon of St. Lucia. Occasionally their ships would be wrecked on the Natal shores; and sometimes the Portuguese Government issued instructions to its captains to explore the coast and construct rough charts.

On such an errand **Perestrello** visited Natal in 1576. He was commissioned by **King Sebastian** "to explore coasts and countries in South Africa." In his report to the king appears **the first description of the land we live in.** Its physical features remain unaltered. At the close of the sixteenth century, as now, it might "be known by a huge point of rock." The coast lands were "covered with large trees," doubtless denser then than now. The sea was deep; the waters clear; and "occasional sandy spots" relieved the otherwise rockbound coast. These old sailors appear to have gone some way into the country. Perestrello speaks of the soil as rich and fit for cultivation. The natives were numerous, and both tame and wild animals were plentiful. What these natives thought of the strange men and their stranger ships there is no means of knowing. For more than a century no more is heard of Natal. Great events were happening in Europe. The power of Spain had been crushed by the defeat of the terrible Armada and by the successful revolt of the Netherlands. England, too, had fought for her liberty and gained it, only to be again subjected to a Stuart despotism. But these events mattered

nothing to the inhabitants of Natal. They knew nothing of the rest of the world, and the rest of the world knew nothing of them.

| | |
|---|---|
| Diaz rounded the Cape . . . . . | 1486 |
| Vasco da Gama discovered Natal . . . . | 1497 |
| Perestrello, Portuguese Commander, visited Natal | 1576 |

---

## CHAPTER II.

### *"BLACKS, BOERS, AND BRITISH."*

### Decay of Portugal.

During the hundred years in which nothing is heard of Natal, **Holland,** a nation whose history was destined to be closely interwoven with both that of this land and of the Cape, became one of the great European powers. From the time when Da Gama discovered the ocean highway round the Cape in 1497 to the close of the 16th century, **Spain** and **Portugal** were the only European nations that traded with **the East.** They had made settlements there, and they kept them, as they had acquired them, by the edge of the sword. Oriental merchants and princes were told that all Europeans except the Spaniards and Portuguese were savages and pirates. The great ocean, instead of being as now the highway of nations, was only "a Spanish lake," and no one but the subjects of the Spanish King was allowed to navigate its waters. **Lisbon** in the 16th century was a

mart of trade such as Venice had been before her glory departed. The silks and spices and precious stones of the tropics could be obtained only in the ports of the Peninsula.

But this monopoly of the Indian trade was soon to cease. In 1580, when the succession to the crown of Portugal was disputed, **Philip II.** of Spain secured it for himself, and thenceforth the fortunes of Portugal were linked with those of Spain. Philip was the false fanatical Spaniard who married Mary of England and with whom both **England** and **the Netherlands** battled for their freedom. In 1579, after a desperate struggle with their gigantic enemy, the hardy **Hollanders** gained their independence. In 1588 Philip's great Armada, sent forth to crush England and Protestantism at one blow, was scattered to the winds. In both of these contests, the new spirit of freedom and of progress was warring with the old order of despotism and superstition; and Spain, with Portugal, the opponents of free thought and speech and action, fell never to rise again.

## The Dutch East India Company.

**The Dutch** succeeded the Portuguese in the supremacy of the seas. When they freed themselves from the yoke of Spain, that country debarred them from sending their ships into the port of Lisbon or participating in the Eastern trade. Thereupon the Hollanders resolved to match the Dutch galiot against the Spanish galleon and compete with the Spaniard in regions which he had considered as his private property. In 1602, a great company of merchants called **the Dutch East India Company** was established under the auspices of the Government. To this Company was granted the sole right of trading to the East of the Cape of Good Hope and of sailing through the Strait of Magellan. The Company was empowered to make treaties with foreign

princes, to build fortresses, and to levy troops. Its affairs were managed by a **Chamber of Seventeen** directors at **Amsterdam.** The first fleet of 14 vessels sailed before the end of the year. The sailors who manned them were the successors of the hardy fishermen who had wrested Holland itself from the ocean—the country which the Romans did not know whether to call land or water—and of the "Beggars of the Sea" who had done such signal service in the war of independence. **The Dutch Republic** was "born of seamen and fostered by the sea"—sea-born and sea-sustained. Her heroic and indomitable commanders gradually ousted the Spaniards from their Indian possessions, and the Dutch flag flew where Spain had formerly held undisputed sway. The industry of the Dutch at home and their enterprise and daring abroad placed them in the front rank of nations. They were the ocean-carriers of the world. Nearly one hundred thousand sailors and three thousand ships were engaged in their trade, and goods from all parts of the world could be purchased in the warehouses of Amsterdam.

**England** at that time was a poor and thinly-peopled country, though intellectually and morally in the first rank of civilisation. She too had an East India Company, and competed with Holland to some extent in the Indian trade, but her maritime power was still in the future.

## Fitzherbert and Shillinge.

From the date of Da Gama's great voyage the Cape became a recognised place of call for vessels bound to India. Dutch, English, and Portuguese ships resorted thither for water and fresh meat, which they obtained from the natives in return for beads, brandy, and tobacco. A primitive **post-office** was also established on the shores of

Table Bay. Outward-bound vessels buried packets containing letters and despatches under peculiarly-shaped flat stones engraved with the names of the ships; and those homeward-bound eagerly searched the underground post-offices for news of country and friends. In 1619, the directors of the English East India Company proposed to the Chamber of Seventeen that the two companies should build a fort in the neighbourhood of the Cape of Good Hope for their common use. The proposal was rejected, the Chamber of Seventeen notifying that it was their intention to establish a station there on their own account.

Next year, in 1620, two commanders of the English East India Company, **Fitzherbert** and **Shillinge,** planted the colours of England on the hill now called the Lion's Rump, and took possession of the Cape and adjacent land in the name of King James. Nothing was done by the Company to follow up the action of its zealous servants, and the proclamation of English authority remained an empty form. English ships now and again called to take in fresh water, but the island of **St. Helena** gradually became the recognised place of refreshment and rendezvous for English East Indiamen.

## Jan Van Riebeek.

A homeward-bound Dutch Indiaman, the **Haarlem,** was wrecked in Table Bay in 1648. The crew spent some time ashore, and were so charmed with the country that on their return to Holland they urged on the Chamber of Seventeen the advisability of forming a settlement in South Africa. Accordingly in 1652, **Jan Van Riebeek,** a surgeon and merchant in the service of the Company, with about a hundred men, arrived at the Cape and, in the name of the Dutch East India Company, took possession of the land on

which Capetown is now built. Mr. Van Riebeek was the first Commander or Governor of the first settlement of white men in South Africa.

## The First Cape Colonists.

The main object of the settlement was to provide supplies for the outward and homeward-bound ships of the Company. As sheep and cattle could be got only from the natives, care was taken to establish and maintain friendly relations with them. These natives, who call themselves **Khoi-Khoin** or *men of men* and were styled **Hottentots** by the Dutch, were a race yellowish-brown in colour, gentle and indolent in disposition, and peaceful and pastoral in their habits. In 1656, nine men who had taken their discharge from the Company's service settled down on land given to them, and became *farmers* or **Boers**. They were **the first true colonists of the Cape**. Their numbers were increased year by year both by immigrants from Holland and Germany and by the Company's freed servants. The Company gave these settlers as much land as they could cultivate and at first supplied them with cattle and goods on credit. **Slaves** from the east coast, from Madagascar, and from Malacca were imported for the use of the farmers. Traffic in human beings was not then illegal nor considered inhuman.

## The Huguenots.

**Simon Van der Stell**, who ruled at the Cape from 1677 to 1699, was anxious that the cultivation of the land by free burghers should be continued. He wished to see the corn-fields and vineyards which already extended for many miles round Table Bay greatly increased. Owing to his solicitations the Chamber of Seventeen sent out in 1688 a party of emigrants, including several families of **Huguenots**, or French Protestants, to the number of

about 300. These French people had been driven from their own land by the intolerance and cruelty of Louis XIV., and had fled for refuge to Holland, in those days the stronghold of liberty in Europe. The Dutch Republic offered them a home at the Cape, where their frugal and industrious habits rendered them most useful settlers. In two or three generations the nationality of the Huguenot refugees became so mingled in that of their Dutch neighbours that all their distinctive characteristics disappeared. Such names, however, as De Villiers, Du Toit, Retief, Le Sueur, Naudé, Joubert, Du Plessis, and Marais still testify to the nationality of their descendants. The men who have built up European influence in South Africa owe much of their patient industry, their bravery, their love of liberty, and their deep religious feeling to Huguenot influence and Huguenot ancestry.

## Discontent of the Farmers.

The Hottentots had to suffer the gradual appropriation of their land by the white men. In some cases the land was purchased from them at a nominal value in goods; in most cases it was simply taken possession of by force. Many of the Hottentots lapsed into a state of serfdom to their white masters. They in their turn thought themselves little better than **slaves of the Dutch East India Company.** All the labour of the farmers went to the enrichment of the Company, so many were the restrictions imposed on them. Not only were heavy taxes levied on all crops raised, but the kind of crops to be grown was prescribed; the farmers could sell their produce only to the Company and at the Company's price; they were not permitted to buy cattle from the natives or to trade with them in any way; and they were even forbidden to go on board

vessels calling at the port. The farmers laid their grievances before the Company in vain. It had no interest in anything but the filling of its own coffers, and the colonists could get no redress. The grievous burdens they had to bear caused their discontent and indignation to grow louder and deeper.

## Trekking.

The rule of the Company became so obnoxious to the boers that many of them moved away with their wagons and flocks and herds far inland beyond its control. This was the origin of the habit of *trekking*—moving from place to place—which has always characterised the Dutch farmers of South Africa. And it was this tendency that later on helped to people Natal, and that founded the Overberg Republics. At first the Government tried by threats of severe punishment to stop the migration from the sea-board, but the movement was too strong to be checked. The farmers continued to move inland, enticed not only by the thought of fresh pastures for their cattle and game for their guns, but by a desire to be free from the irksome restraints of the Government. The Company made some attempt to follow the migratory colonists. A magistracy was established at **Swellendam** in 1745 and at **Graaff Reinet** in 1786; and in 1788 the **Great Fish River** was declared the boundary of the settlement.

But the arm of the Government was not long enough to reach every wandering boer. Far in the *veld* they enjoyed the liberty they craved for, and knew no law but their own will. This isolation from their fellows and from all civilising influences was most injurious to their moral and social condition. The children grew up untaught; there were no schools and no churches. Had it not been for their pious national habit of reading the Bible night and morning to

the assembled household, they must speedily have lapsed into the degraded condition of the Hottentots and other slaves who surrounded them.

## Bushmen and Kafirs.

The boers who moved northward through the Karoo plains found their progress barred by the **Bushmen**. Those going eastwards encountered the **Kafirs**. Both these native races were very different in character from the Hottentots, most of whom had sunk into a state of slavery. The Bushmen were yellowish-brown pygmy folk who lived by hunting and were armed with bows and poisoned arrows. They were spread over all the country south of the Orange River. Enraged at the white man's invasion of their hunting grounds, they took their revenge by stealing his cattle, murdering his herdsmen, and sometimes making a raid on the homestead itself. The Government was unable or unwilling to aid the farmers in defending their property. They accordingly banded themselves into armed parties called *commandoes* for defensive and aggressive measures against their diminutive foes. The war went on for about thirty years until the Bushmen were either killed or driven further into the wilderness. They never yielded to the white man.

The boers on the eastern frontier found the aborigines there more formidable than the pygmy Bushmen. The **Amaxosa** tribe of Kafirs, having been defeated in a fight with the neighbouring **Abatembu**, turned their attention to the white men as more likely victims. In "moonlight raid and morning fight" they plundered, and burned, and murdered without mercy. In return, when the settlers gained the advantage, they used it cruelly enough. The boers were diligent readers of the Bible, but the teaching of the Old Testament attracted them more than that of the New. The more ignorant of them believed themselves to

be the "chosen people," and the Bushmen and Kafirs the Canaanites whom they had a Divine command to smite and utterly destroy. Affairs on the border, both for natives and colonists, were in a most deplorable condition, and the Government could or would devise no means of protecting the settlers from the Kafir marauders. The burghers of Swellendam and Graaff Reinet therefore assembled in arms in February, 1795, and declared that they were "unwilling to obey the Dutch East India Company any longer, and that they would be independent."

## The English at the Cape.

At this juncture there was a most unexpected change in the aspect of affairs. While the disaffection against the Government was at its height, an **English fleet** under Admiral Elphinstone sailed into Table Bay. Troops were landed under the command of General Craig, who took possession of the Cape Colony for his Britannic Majesty King George. Holland had been overrun by the armies of the French Republic, and the Stadtholder had fled for refuge to England. At his request, the English Government sent out the forces to the Cape to prevent that valuable possession falling into the hands of the French.

In November, 1795, the Governor and officers of the Dutch East India Company, which had ruled the Cape for a century and a half, took their departure from Capetown; and the general feeling of the colonists was that nothing in their official existence became them so well as the leaving it. Great must have been the tyranny and misrule of a Company that had caused orderly law-abiding Hollanders and Germans to hate it with so bitter a hatred. The wrongs under which the colonists suffered were redressed as far as possible by **General Craig**, who assumed the government.

## Governor-General Janssens.

The first short period of English rule at the Cape ended in 1803, when the territory was again handed over to Holland by the Peace of Amiens. No commercial company this time intervened between the colonists and their Fatherland. In **Governor-General Janssens** the colony had a wise and liberal-minded ruler who did his utmost to increase its prosperity. He visited the various districts, and his instructions to the *landdrosts*, or magistrates, showed an intelligent foresight into its future. They were enjoined to give their attention to improving the breed of sheep and cattle; to the raising of grain and the culture of the vine; to tree-planting and the preservation of forests; to the establishment of schools; and to the humane treatment of Hottentots and slaves. Care was to be taken also that no cause should be given to the frontier tribes for making forays on the farms of the settlers. Governor Janssens was not permitted to see the fruit of his labours.

## Frontier Troubles.

On the renewal of the war in Europe, England resolved to retake the Cape and hold it as the key to her Indian possessions. In 1806 **Sir David Baird** again and finally annexed the colony to England. The **Earl of Caledon,** the first Governor, pursued the good policy of Governor Janssens. The only cloud on the prosperity of the colony was the chronic feuds with the warlike kafirs beyond the Great Fish River, the boundary fixed in 1788 to arrest their westward march as the Forth was said to "bridle the wild Highlandman." These tribes—the Abatembu, the Gaikas, the Galekas—were to cause much suffering and bloodshed before they were finally subdued. The first great encounter between the kafirs and the colonial and regular

troops occurred in 1811. **Grahamstown,** at first only a military post, takes its name from the officer who commanded on that occasion. In 1819 there was another outbreak, and again in 1834, in 1846, and in 1850. Not till 1877, in the sixth and last "Kafir war," when Sandilli, the chief of the Gaikas, was killed, did savagery receive its final blow on the Cape frontier.

## Port Elizabeth.

To assist in the settlement and civilisation of the eastern border the Government introduced a small army of British emigrants in the year 1820. They landed at **Algoa Bay,** and most of them settled in the district, thenceforth named Albany, between the Fish and Bushman's Rivers. The industry and endurance of these immigrants have made the Eastern Province what it is, and transformed the beach crowned with sand-dunes where they landed into the great seaport of **Port Elizabeth.** The town was named after the wife of the Acting Governor, Sir Rufane Donkin. **Thomas Pringle,** the poet of South Africa, was among the immigrants.

| | |
|---|---|
| Dutch East India Company established ... | 1602 |
| Fitzherbert and Shillinge take possession of the Cape ... ... ... ... | 1620 |
| First Dutch Settlement at the Cape ... | 1652 |
| Arrival of Huguenots at the Cape ... | 1688 |
| Cape Colony extended to Great Fish River... | 1788 |
| The Cape taken by the English ... ... | 1795 |
| The Cape restored to the Dutch ... ... | 1803 |
| The Cape finally annexed to England ... | 1806 |
| Port Elizabeth founded ... ... ... | 1820 |
| Kafir Wars on the Cape Frontier... 1811 1819 1834 1846 1850 1877 | |

## CHAPTER III.

### *SAILORS AND NATIVES.*

**Ancient Mariners.**

While great ships laden with merchandise from the Indies sailed into Table Bay, and Capetown gradually grew under the shadow of Table Mountain, and the settlers trekked year by year northward and eastward, little was known of the country now called Natal except the parts bordering the ocean. The outer anchorage was still a silent sea, and what is now the busy Point and town was dense bush, cleared here and there for a native *kraal*, and the haunt of numerous wild animals. **Capetown is two centuries older than Durban.** How far the land "ran back to the west" was not yet ascertained, but it was all occupied by black men of the same race as those who opposed the eastward progress of the Cape settlers at the Great Fish River.

The first Englishmen who ever set foot in Natal were the crew of the **Johanna,** wrecked near Delagoa Bay in 1683, when Simon Van der Stell ruled at Cape Castle. These sailors, carrying with them the most valuable part of their cargo, set out to walk to Capetown and received great kindness from the Natal kafirs. For some trifling gifts of beads, knives, and looking-glasses, they guided the Englishmen south, carried their baggage, and provided them with food on the way. Great "civility and humanity" was shown to the travellers by all the tribes whose territories they passed through, each tribe "delivering their charge to others" until the long and toilsome journey to the Cape

was accomplished. It is pleasant to remember that the first meeting of the Englishman and the Kafir in Natal was marked by friendliness on both sides, and that the nation which now rules these natives was, in the persons of the Johanna sailors, indebted to them for help in time of need.

Another English ship, the **Frances,** visited the Natal coast in 1684 and purchased ivory from the natives. Her cargo also comprised slaves brought from Madagascar and afterwards sold to the freed burghers at the Cape. Slaves could not be bought in Natal. Shipwrecked sailors who spent some time in the country tell us that the natives "would not part with their children or any of their connections for anything in the world, loving one another with a most remarkable strength of affection." So, although slavers often touched at the Bay of Natal for fresh meat, corn, and fruit, with which the natives willingly supplied them, they could do no trade there.

## Wreck of the Stavenisse.

Somewhere between the Umzinto and the Umzimkulu, on the 16th of February, 1686, a large Dutch East Indiaman, the **Stavenisse,** commanded by **Captain Willem Knyff** and laden with pepper, went ashore on the rocks. Fourteen of the crew were drowned in the surf; the rest, numbering about sixty, got safely to land. Yielding to the entreaties of the sailors, and leaving the surgeon and two men sick in a tent they had constructed from the wreckage, Captain Knyff set out with them to walk to the Cape. After a journey of nine miles up hill and down dale, he felt too weak to proceed further and returned to the wreck. Two days afterwards nine of the sailors returned, and reported that the remaining forty-seven had gone on their way towards the Cape unappalled by the dangers before

them. In the hope of reaching Capetown by sea, the men thus left at the Stavenisse set to work and repaired their broken boat. They could fortunately get provisions from the wreck, and in fourteen days the boat was finished. But in pushing it out, it went to pieces in the surf, and the men barely escaped with their lives.

## The Englishmen of the Good Hope.

Thus wrecked on a savage shore, and deprived of all their clothes and provisions, Knyff and his men were indeed in a miserable plight. At first they obtained bread and millet in exchange for nails and bolts from the natives who flocked to the wreck. But when the natives found that they could get ironwork from the wreck for themselves with little trouble, the shipwrecked seamen were left without resources. They had abandoned themselves to despair when **two Englishmen** unexpectedly made their appearance. The strangers proved friends in need. They also were sailors, part of the crew of the **Good Hope,** which in May of the previous year had been struck by a squall, while crossing the bar of Natal, and driven aground at the Point. These two, with three others, had remained behind at the Bay, when the captain and nine men proceeded to Mozambique in a large decked boat which they put together from materials on board their ship. The Good Hope men had abundance of beads and copper rings to trade with, and in the frequent journeys which they made inland, they invariably found the people friendly and hospitable. Hearing of a wreck down the coast, two of them had come south to offer assistance. They assured Captain Knyff that they had sufficient merchandise to buy food for all the party for fifty years; and they made the Stavenisse men welcome to a share of all they had.

## Boat Building in 1686.

The timely aid of the English sailors was gratefully accepted, and the eleven men left of the Stavenisse crew joined the five Englishmen at **the Bay**. The surgeon had died, and the boatswain's mate was trampled to death by an elephant. The seamen thus strangely brought together resolved to build a small vessel strong enough to convey them to the Cape of Good Hope. Out of ironwork from the wrecked Indiaman they made nails and bolts and also some rough tools. Native timber was to be had in plenty. The land adjoining the Bay was covered with "tall, straight, and thick trees fit for house or ship timber;" and the natives willingly helped the white men in their labours. The **Amatuli** tribe, who then occupied the Bluff and land round the Bay, have to this day a tradition of helping white men to build a boat. In the beginning of 1687 Knyff's party was increased to twenty-five by the arrival of nine Englishmen, sailors of the **Bonaventura** which had been wrecked at St. Lucia Bay, and which was probably, like the Good Hope, engaged in the slave trade.

With the aid of the new-comers, the boat, then or afterwards named the **Centaur,** was ready for sea in February. To the eye of a modern boat-builder she doubtless would have looked clumsy and unwieldy, but she proved a strong and serviceable craft. A stock of provisions—meal, fowls, goats, smoked beef, and pumpkins—and of fresh water stored in casks made of native timber, was put on board; and on the 17th of February, a year and a day after the Stavenisse was wrecked on the Umzimkulu rocks, the Centaur left for Capetown with twenty men on board. Five elected to remain rather than risk the voyage. Having no chart, compass, or quadrant, the voyagers had to keep the land in sight all the way to Capetown. They arrived there

without misadventure in twelve days. The miserable appearance of the men, their strange craft, and the tale of their year's sojourn in the **Land of Natal** must have been a nine days' wonder in the small town under Table Mountain.

## The Centaur.

Captain Knyff and his men told their adventures to **Commander Van der Stell** at the Castle, and a passage home in one of the Company's ships was provided for them. Two Englishmen of the Good Hope were taken into the Company's service at their own request and placed in command of the Centaur, which was purchased from its crew. The little ship was again sent out in 1688 to report further on the country of Natal and to search for the forty-seven men of the Stavenisse who had never arrived at the Cape. Some way north of Algoa Bay the Centaur being in want of wood and water sent a boat to find a suitable landing place. The men in the boat saw signals being made to them by natives with karosses, as they thought, and paid no heed to them. Shortly afterwards, a raft with three men on it appeared near the Centaur. The men were picked up and found to be sailors of the Stavenisse. They reported that about twenty of their companions were living in native kraals close by. The Centaur succeeded in rescuing all except three who had, a day or two previously, started north to the wreck of the Stavenisse, and who were afterwards found at the Bay of Natal by the galiot **Noord.** Of the remaining Stavenisse men some had fallen victims to flooded rivers and beasts of prey on their way to the Amaxosa country; and twelve had left for the Cape despite the warnings of the natives and were never heard of more. It was supposed they had been murdered by Bushmen. A

present of beads and neck and arm rings was sent ashore to the chief **Magama** in the name of the Honourable East India Company as an acknowledgment of the kind treatment the Dutch sailors had received from the **Amaxosa.** The Centaur did not go on to Natal. Finding that the one desire of these destitute sailors was to get back to their Fatherland, the captain returned to the Cape at once to put them on board a homeward-bound vessel.

## The Noord.

Commander Simon Van der Stell, after hearing Captain Knyff's account of the Natal coastlands, was inclined to think that a profitable trade might be carried on there, especially in **ivory.** Knyff's men had brought with them three tons of that commodity, and considering the "great troops of elephants of an incredible size" which roamed the bush, much more was certainly forthcoming. Accordingly the galiot **Noord** was despatched to the Bay of Natal in 1690 **to purchase the Bay and adjoining land** from the natives and to establish a settlement for the Company. The purchase was duly effected. Beads and copper rings of the value of about £50 were given for the land to "the King and Chief of those parts." Landmarks inscribed with the arms of the Dutch East India Company were set up in various places round the Bay.

But a settlement was never formed, partly perhaps because of the dangerous entrance to the Bay. The **sand bar** was there "at the mouth of the river," and the great waves leaped over it with their foaming crests just as they do now. None of the Company's galiots could cross that dreaded sand-bank without danger. The Amatuli seem to have regarded the purchase of their land as a mere ceremony. When a Dutch captain visited the Bay in 1705, the chief of

that time entirely repudiated the bargain. "My father," he said, "is dead. As to what he agreed to, it was for himself. I have nothing to say to it." And so Dutch occupation of Natal for the time being came to an end.

The Company had a trading station at **Delagoa Bay** for some years, but gave it up in 1730 because of its unhealthy climate and the consequent mortality among the men. After that year the Bay of Natal was seldom visited by Dutch ships.

## The Empire of Monomotapa.

From the narratives of the men of the Good Hope and the Stavenisse, from the log-book of the Noord, and from accounts of exploring expeditions inland, Commander Van der Stell was enabled to construct a more accurate chart of South Africa than the maps hitherto in vogue. These represented correctly enough the centre of Africa as a vast lake region whence flowed the Nile and the Congo. That information had been obtained from Portuguese traders who had made long journeys inland. Some of them indeed are believed to have often crossed the continent from Angola to Mozambique. South of the Tropic of Capricorn, the geographers gave full sway to their imagination. A chain of high mountains ran parallel with the west coast. Along the eastern base of the mountains a magnificent river known as **the Camissa** flowed south to the sea near Cape Agulhas. **The Rio do Infante** was marked near where the Great Fish River flows, and **Terra de Natal** was laid down south of a river named **St. Luzia.** Further north a large arm of the sea received four rivers, the largest of which was **de Spirito Sancto.** The great space east of the Camissa River was occupied by the **Empire of Monomotapa**, with numerous towns indicated by turreted castles. The town

nearest to the Cape was **Vigiti Magna.** In 1660 Commander Van Riebeek sent out an expedition to discover it—without success. The people of Monomotapa were reputed to be rich and highly civilised. The name of their land, which signifies *Men of the Mines*, was suggestive of the wealth treasured up in its cities. Mr. Van Riebeek had heard also that in that wonderful empire were to be found Amazons, cannibals with hair that reached the ground, and a race of people who tamed lions and used them in war. On the River de Spirito Sancto two towns were marked—**Monomotapa,** and **Davagul**, the treasure city of the Emperor. After the manner of ancient geographers, pictures of elephants, ostriches, lions, and rhinoceroses appeared in the maps to illustrate the fauna of the continent and fill up blank spaces.

## Facts and Fables.

A party of Namaqua Hottentots, who visited Cape Castle in 1681, disclaimed all knowledge of the fabled Camissa or the great town of Vigiti Magna on its banks; but they told Commander Van der Stell of a mighty river, far away from their kraals, which flowed from east to west, and of the **Bechuana** people who lived to the north. The river was **the Orange,** never seen by any European till 1778, when Colonel Gordon discovered it and named it in honour of the Stadtholder. Explorers who went eastward found that Hottentot tribes occupied all the country to the border of the Kafir dominion. Kafirs of the Amaxosa tribe were settled as far westward as the district which is now East London. The sailors of the Good Hope and the Stavenisse reported the whole coast and the country inland, from St. Lucia Bay to the Buffalo, to be occupied by natives of the same race. The tribes from north to south were the

"Emboas" or Abambo in Natal; the "Mapontemousse" or Amampondomusi; the "Maponte" or Amapondo; the "Matembas" or Abatembu; and the "Magossebe" or Amaxosa.

As a consequence of the light thus thrown, at the close of the seventeenth century, on this end of the Dark Continent, the Camissa disappeared from charts of South Africa, and the visionary Empire of Monomotapa, with all its gold and jewels, faded into the light of common day.

## Native Races.

At the beginning of this century all the country now called Natal was possessed by **Kafirs** or **Bantus** of various tribes. For how long they had dwelt in the land is not known, but it is probable that they were there when Da Gama sailed past the Bluff in 1497. They came from the north and drove out the **Hottentots**, who seem to have been their immediate predecessors. The Hottentots themselves had taken possession of the country from the **Bushmen** who are supposed to have been the original people of South Africa. Successive waves of population from the north had thus driven first the Bushmen and then the Hottentots south into Cape Colony, where the Dutch found them both on their arrival in 1652. The Kafirs, who were by far the most powerful and warlike race of the three, would soon have filled up the southern part of the continent had not their westward march been arrested at the Great Fish River by the boer colonists.

## The Bushmen.

This diminutive race seems closely allied to the pygmies found by **Du Chaillu** in the western Equatorial coastlands, by **Schweinfurth** in the Upper Nile basin, and by **Stanley**

in the great Aruwhimi forest. They cannot be identified by language or appearance with any of the nations around them, and it has been conjectured that they are all fragments of a primeval African race which has been broken up and dispersed by successive immigrations of Hottentot, Bantu, and Negro tribes, just as the Lapps and Basques in Europe were driven into corners by the great wave of Aryan population. The earliest African traveller who mentions the pygmies is an English sailor, **Andrew Battell.** He lived among the Portuguese and Kafirs in Angola for eighteen years at the end of the 16th century, and he describes the mannikins as "no bigger than boys of twelve years old, but very thick, and live only upon flesh which they kill in the woods with their bows and darts."

The Bushmen are savages, pure and simple. In colour a muddy yellow, they are diminutive but not dwarfish, have prominent cheek-bones and crafty deep-set eyes, and hair in woolly tufts with small spaces between. **Livingstone** found Bushmen near Lake Ngami much taller and more intelligent than those living on the borders of Cape Colony. Although in the desert they are obliged to construct rude dwellings by hanging reed mats on sticks, they prefer "caves and holes in rocks and such houses as are formed by nature." A wandering people, they sow no corn and keep no cattle or goats, but live by hunting and are nearly as fleet of foot as the antelopes which they pursue with bows and poisoned arrows. The arrows are reeds with a barbed head of bone or tipped with a triangular piece of iron. The barb is coated with various poisonous compounds made from the juices of an amaryllis and a euphorbia mixed with the venom of snakes, spiders, and a deadly species of caterpillar. The game is eked out by roots which the women dig up in the desert with a *graaf-stock* or digging-stick.

This is their only agricultural implement, and it consists simply of a pointed stick thrust through a bored stone. Many of these stones are found in places far away from the recent haunts of the Bushmen.

Though now almost extinct, the Bushmen were very numerous when the Dutch arrived at the Cape. They were then scattered over all the country from the Nieuwveld and Sneeuwbergen to the Orange River, and they lurked in the gorges of the **Drakensberg** long after the Kafirs took possession of the coastlands. Thence they sallied forth by night and stole the cattle of Hottentots, Kafirs, and white settlers alike. Each Bushman stole and fought for himself and he acknowledged no chief. Every man's hand was against them. The Hottentots called them "Obiqua," *robbers and murderers;* the Kafir tribes knew them as "Abatwa," the identical name—"Batwa"—of their pygmy kinsmen found by Stanley near the Mountains of the Moon. The Stavenisse sailors relate how they fell among thieves before reaching the hospitable Amaxosa, the thieves being "Maligryghas" or Bushmen. So late as 1856, **Fort Nottingham**, near Spion Kop, was built to protect the farmers near the Berg from Bushmen forays.

The Bushman language has few words and contains six separate *clicks*—sounds which more resemble those of animals than articulate human speech. The Hottentots, who came after the Bushmen, have four of these clicks, and the Kafirs, who came after the Hottentots, have three. The mantis insect occupies an important place in the Bushman mythology, and does many wonderful things. Though so low in the scale of civilisation, the Bushmen yet possess an art unknown to the other native races, the power of graphic illustration. In caves and on the sides of sheltering cliffs, once their homes in Natal, may be seen drawings executed in

red, brown, and black, representing scenes of war and the chase, and testifying to their former occupancy of the land.

## The Hottentots.

The **Hottentots** were the first native race seen by Europeans in South Africa. Da Gama had a skirmish with them in 1497, and in 1509 D'Almeida, the Viceroy of India, who had landed at Table Bay, was slain with sixty-five men in an attack on one of their villages. When Mr. Van Riebeek landed at the Cape, Hottentots of various clans or tribes were spread over all Cape Colony. At first they resisted the encroachments of the Dutch on their possessions, but gradually yielded to the temptations of **brandy and tobacco.** For these they sold their birthright. They bartered their flocks and herds, their land, and even their independence for fire-water, and speedily became children of Gibeon to their white masters.

The **Khoi-Khoin,** as they called themselves, were much taller than the Bushmen, though like them they were tawny-coloured and had the same Mongolian type of features and tufted woolly hair. They owned immense flocks of cattle and sheep, and lived in villages or *kraals* under hereditary chiefs. They were a dirty indolent people, fond of feasting, singing, and dancing; and were armed with bows and arrows, *kerries* or clubbed sticks, and javelins which the Portuguese called *azagayas* or *assegais.* Their religion was mainly ancestor-worship, their chief god being the traditional founder of the Khoi-Khoin.

When the great measure of **slave emancipation** took effect in the Cape Colony in 1838, the Hottentots regained their freedom. Since that time most of them have adopted the customs, language, and pursuits of the colonists. They have, however, become so mixed with other races that hardly a pure Hottentot is left in the Cape.

## The Kafirs.

The **Kafirs** do not know themselves by this name. It is a term of reproach, signifying *infidel*, applied by the Mohammedans to all peoples not of their own religion, and it was current among the Portuguese to denote the black races south of their settlements on the east coast. From them it was adopted by the Dutch and English. The Kafirs of Natal and of Cape Colony belong to the great lingual **Bantu** family, whose numerous tribes are found all through South Africa from a few degrees north of the Equator. The Bantu traditions seem to indicate that they originally came from the north and north-east. of Africa, and were driven south by Hamitic tribes from Western Asia. The royal salute of the Zulu Kafirs—"Bayete!" *Let them bring tribute*—is virtually the same word as "Mabelete!" the exclamation of the men of Shoa when they pay homage to their king.

Although now speaking different dialects, the tribes on the Gaboon River and in the central lake region, the Bechuanas and Basutos, the Ova-herero tribes of Damara-land, the Matabele and Mashonas, the Amaswazi and Amaxosa, all belong to the same race, and originally spoke the same primeval Bantu mother-tongue. The tribal prefix "ama" or "aba," belonging to the eastern Bantu group, is found as "ma," "ba," "be," "wa," and "ova" in other dialects. The **Amazulu** and the **Amaxosa** are generally taken as representative of the eastern Bantus, but while the latter had established itself as a powerful tribe beside the Great Fish River in 1686, the former was unnoticed and insignificant until the beginning of this century.

The Kafirs are tall handsome men, dark brown, and sometimes almost black, in colour. While some have the flat nose and thick lips of the Negro, others have regular features

suggestive of an Asiatic origin. Each tribe is ruled by a hereditary chief, assisted by his *indunas* or headmen. Their huts are of a bee-hive shape, and a collection of huts is called a *kraal*. The women build the huts and cnltivate the gardens. The Kafirs are an intelligent, laughter-loving people, brave and cruel in war, and kind and hospitable in peace, as many shipwrecked sailors could testify. Their religions beliefs centre in ancestor-worship. Their first ancestor, **Unkulunkulu,** *the Great-Great*, shook the reeds with a mighty wind, and a man and woman emerged from them who tanght the people to till the gronnd, milk cows, and brew beer. The **Isanusi** are the priests and doctors of the tribe, and like the Highland seers of old owe their inflnence to their repnted gift of "second-sight." They have the power of commnication with the nnseen world and with the spirits of their ancestors, and they employ their supernatural knowledge in detecting persons guilty of evil practices of all kinds. Many of the Kafir nursery-tales about beasts and birds resemble the folk-lore of European peoples.

## Natal in 1800.

At the beginning of this century and np to about 1812, **Natal** was inhabited by **ninety-four tribes** of Kafirs representing about **a million of people.** The country was "incredibly populons." The remains of stone kraals with which the npland districts are studded at the present day bear witness to the immense population which must at one time have occupied the country. It is to be remembered that at the beginning of the century the name Natal applied only to the Bay and to the coastlands known to the early navigators. The conntry to the south and that to the north of the Tngela had no distinctive names as they have now.

Each part of the land was known by the name of the tribe inhabiting it.

We learn from the sailors of the Stavenisse that the **Abambo** were the most numerous and powerful of the Natal kafirs. There were several sections of this people, the most important being the **Amahlubi,** the largest tribe not only in Natal but in south-eastern Africa. Their territory was on both sides of the Buffalo River from its sources to its junction with the Tugela. Langalibalele, long after noted in Natal history, was the recognised head of the race. The frontier kafirs still know Natal as Embo, the traditional home of the Abambo. Other large tribes were the **Amaqwabe**, who occupied both banks of the Tugela; the **Amakunze**, between the Bushman and Mooi Rivers; and the **Amatuli**, who owned the coast country and for 35 miles inland between the Umgeni and the Umkomaas, including the Bluff and the sandy plain which is now Durban. The huts of the **Abakwamacibise** covered the land which now forms the borough of Maritzburg; and Greytown was the dwelling-place of the **Amafunze.**

The country was more thickly wooded then than it is now, and the extensive bush-lands and the long grass and reeds of the river valleys were the haunts of countless wild animals. Immense troops of elephants roamed the coast-lands and the thorns; lions and panthers lurked in the kloofs and among broken ground; elands, hartebeesten, and other antelopes swarmed in the veld; and hippopotami and crocodiles abounded in the rivers. The crack of the wagon whip and the steam whistle of the locomotive were not yet heard in the land.

The natives lived in the midst of plenty. They had cattle, sheep, goats, and fowls in abundance, fruit and vegetables, bread and corn. Then as now they made "a bitter

sort of drink from grain purposely to make merry with, and when they met on such occasions the men made themselves extraordinary fine with feathers stuck in their caps very thick." Family disputes about the succession to the chieftainship sometimes caused dissension and bloodshed, but there were no chronic feuds between the tribes. They lived in perfect amity. When angry passions rose, as they would do occasionally, the quarrel was decided by a kind of savage tournament between the rival clans at which the women were spectators. When the victory was decided, assegai and shield were laid aside, and "the sun that saw tribes fight never set till their quarrel was ended." They never "lifted" their neighbours' cattle, nor burned their huts, nor coveted their land; and no foreign foe disturbed them. Ninety years ago Natal was a black Arcadia.

| | |
|---|---|
| Wreck of the Johanna ... ... ... | 1683 |
| Wreck of the Stavenisse ... ... ... | 1686 |
| First boat built in Natal ... ... ... | 1686 |
| Natal visited by Dutch ships ... | ...1688—1730 |
| Bay of Natal purchased by the Dutch ... | 1690 |
| Orange River discovered ... ... ... | 1778 |

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### *CHAKA.*

### The Umtetwa.

Along the lower part of the Black and White Umfolosi Rivers, in what is now the heart of Zululand, there lived at that time a powerful tribe called the **Umtetwa.** Tribu-

tary to it along with other small clans was the **Amazulu,** an insignificant tribe numbering about two thousand, and occupying the land along the upper part of the White Umfolosi. **Senzangakona** was the chief of the Amazulu. The adjoining tribes not owning allegiance to the Umtetwa were the **Undwandwe** under **Zwide,** the **Amangwana** with its chief **Matiwana,** the **Abatembu,** and the **Amacunu.** Further to the north and nearer Delagoa Bay were the **Amaswazi** people. These tribes, like those south of the Tugela, had lived for hundreds of years in peace and comfort under the patriarchal rule of their separate chiefs. No wars or rumours of wars disturbed them. About the year 1812 a more turbulent phase of their history began, and the events which led to it arose out of dissensions in the family of the Umtetwa chief. These events, apparently unimportant, affected the welfare of all the natives from the Zambesi to St. John's River and were ultimately the cause of Natal becoming a British colony.

## The Assegai Wound.

The old Umtetwa chief, **Jobe,** had two sons, **Tana** and **Godongwana.** Tana was nominated by his father as his successor and dwelt with his brother in one of the royal kraals. Impatient to occupy his father's seat, he and Godongwana plotted the murder of the old chief. The conspiracy was found out and the brothers' hut was surrounded in the night. All the inmates were slain except Godongwana. He leaped the fence and escaped, but with a barbed assegai in his back thrown at him in the darkness. The wounded man concealed himself in the bush, where he was found next day by his sister. She extracted the spear-head, dressed his wound, and enabled him to disguise himself so as to escape detection. At first he wandered about

among the neighbouring tribes, often having hairbreadth escapes from the emissaries of his father. Native traditions aver that his life was miraculously preserved. After some time he disappeared, and for ten or fifteen years nothing was heard of Godongwana. Old Jobe was gathered to his fathers, and a new chief reigned over the Umtetwa people.

## Return of the Wanderer.

All at once strange stories began to find their way to the kraals on the Umfolosi of a young chief who was coming from the south, along the base of the Kahlamba, and who was exciting the greatest interest and astonishment among the tribes on his route by reason of two strange animals which accompanied him, and on one of which he sat. Before that time none of the natives north of the Umzimvubu had ever seen a horse. The horseman advanced by slow stages to the Umtetwa kraals. By the time he arrived it was generally believed that he was the long-exiled **Godongwana.** His wonderful escapes, his mysterious disappearance, and the unknown animals he brought with him, all favoured his being regarded with superstitious reverence. When he showed the scar on his back, he was hailed with acclamations as the rightful chief of the Umtetwa. "His wound is his witness," the people said. Godongwana no longer, he assumed the name of **Dingiswayo,** *the Wanderer.*

## Dingiswayo.

During his years of banishment Dingiswayo had lived in the Cape Colony, probably in the service of some colonist. He had observed there that the white men had a standing army properly officered and divided into regiments and

companies. So when he returned as chief of his tribe he brought back with him the idea of union and organised combination as opposed to petty tribal jealousies and individual weakness. The Umtetwa people were not long in discovering that in **Dingiswayo** they had found their master. They listened to his counsels, and he was soon able to mould the various sections of the tribe into a strong military force. He divided his young men into regiments, distinguishing each by a different name and by the colour of the shields. Their weapon was the long-handled spear, or *umkonto*, which was thrown at the enemy from a distance.

Besides re-organising his tribe and founding a military system, Dingiswayo cultivated the arts of peace. He opened a trade with the Portuguese at Delagoa Bay, and he established a manufactory for karosses where over a hundred men were constantly employed. He offered rewards for new and ornamental designs for pillows, snuff-spoons, milk-dishes, and ladles. A table and chair were sent as a gift to the chief from Delagoa Bay, and a model of the chair was made by one of his workmen from a single block of wood.

## A Clement Conqueror.

About the year 1805 a son of the Amazulu chief Senzangakona, named **Chaka**, quarrelled with his family and fled for protection to Dingiswayo. He was only a stripling, and he joined Dingiswayo's army as a recruit. He found soldiering so congenial that he soon became one of that chief's most trusted warriors. Dingiswayo subdued all the neighbouring tribes, one after the other, but he never conquered to destroy. He quartered his army in the enemy's country till their corn was exhausted, but he seldom took their cattle; the dispersed people were then permitted to return

as his vassals. Dingiswayo never allowed women and children to be put to death. On one occasion he captnred all the women and children from the nnguarded kraal of the Amaqwabe chief. After having a war dance performed in their presence, in which he himself joined, he ordered them home, saying he fought with men, not women, and that when men left their homes to the enemy it was a sign they were beaten. Dingiswayo had many battles with **Zwide,** the Undwandwe chief. He often took Zwide prisoner and as often released him. He fought only for victory, he said, and Zwide had been the friend of his father. The adjoining tribes, being constantly liable to attack from Dingiswayo, had of necessity adopted in some measnre the military system begnn by the Umtetwa. Tribes before unwarlike had thus their manner of life completely changed.

## Dispersion of the Amahlubi.

Chaka's father, Senzangakona, died about 1810. Although **Chaka** was not the rightful heir he was chosen **chief of the Amazulu** by the influence of his patron Dingiswayo, who fully recognised his favourite's extraordinary military ability as well as his loyalty to himself. As a tribntary chief, Chaka joined in all Dingiswayo's raids. Together they attacked the **Amangwana** nnder **Matiwana** about 1812 and drove them across the Buffalo. The fngitives forced their way with rapine and bloodshed throngh the country of the Amahlnbi and settled themselves under the Drakensberg near the Tngela waterfall. The **Amahlubi** was thns the first Natal tribe displaced and scattered by the warlike wave from the north. It was a tribe weakened by internal strife, and it presented no united front to the foe. Some of the Amahlubi fled across the Berg into what is now the Orange Free State; others made their way to

the Cape frontier; while a feeble remnant under **Langalibalele** remained in part of their old land near the sources of the Umzinyati, in what is now the Utrecht division of the Transvaal. They afterwards became Zulu tributaries.

## Dingiswayo's Death.

The great chief of the Umtetwa fell a victim to the vindictiveness of a woman. On one of his forays into the Undwandwe country, probably about 1818, Dingiswayo was with the advance guard of his army and was taken prisoner by Zwide. Mindful of the magnanimity so often manifested by Dingiswayo when he was in a similar predicament, Zwide wished to liberate his captive. But his mother, Tombazi, bearing malice in her heart, persuaded him to put his generous enemy to death. Zwide's people then overran Dingiswayo's country, and the Umtetwa people took refuge with Chaka. They have ever since formed part of the Amazulu nation, though keeping their distinctive tribal name. By their accession the originally small and despised Zulu tribe became a dreaded power in the hands of Chaka.

## Chaka's Army.

**Chaka** was a merciless savage, with all Dingiswayo's desire for conquest but none of his generosity. His ambition was made of sterner stuff, and he entirely disapproved of Dingiswayo's policy of releasing prisoners and of allowing vanquished enemies to re-occupy their land. By the defeat of his powerful neighbour, **Zwide,** who had all along defied Dingiswayo and himself, and by the submission of the **Undwandwe** tribe, he gained another numerous addition to his army. Chaka spared only the young men of the tribes he conquered. The old men, women, and children were invariably destroyed, sometimes with the most atrocious

cruelties, as "they only consumed the food which made young warriors strong." Instead of the handful of long spears for throwing with which each soldier had hitherto been armed, only one short broad-bladed spear—the *ixwa* or stabbing assegai — was allowed to each warrior. That ensured their coming to close quarters with the enemy, and any one returning from battle without his weapon or that of his foe was immediately put to death. Cowardice or suspected cowardice was also punished with death. The soldiers were not allowed to marry lest the tender ties of wife and children should alienate their hearts from martial pursuits. Military kraals were placed all over the country, and the time not occupied in fighting was devoted to military drill, singing, dancing, and athletic games.

Each regiment numbered about 1,500 and was distinguished by the colour of the shield. The "Ironsides" or tried warriors carried white shields with one or two black spots. **A warrior** in full dress was a most impressive figure. A thick pad of otter skin covered his head and projected over the forehead, imparting a ferocious look to his appearance. This fillet was graced by a single long crane feather in front and a bunch of feathers of all kinds and hues at the back, while from its sides and covering his ears depended pieces of jackal skin. Strips of ox skin of divers colours covered his body, from the neck to the waist, and his right arm. The left or shield arm was bare. A costly *simba* or war-kilt, made of four hundred rolls of civet skin, hung from the waist to the knee. The lower part of the leg was covered with white tails attached to a garter, and ruffles of skin protected the ankle. Sandals, worn before Chaka's time, were by him forbidden as they impeded the movements of his warriors.

Chaka had also **cadet corps.** All the cadet companies had black shields, each company being distinguished by a

differently shaped and ornamented head-dress. Veteran regiments were allowed to retire after a certain period of service and the warriors to marry; the cadets were then promoted to the regular army. When an *impi* or war-party was sent out, only the general was entrusted with the secret of its destination, so that the devoted victims could know nothing of the intended onslaught till the awful war-chant of the Zulus sounded in their ears. If Chaka was satisfied that the spears of his warriors had been bathed in blood and that the enemy's country had been thoroughly looted, then the regiments were feasted and a share of the spoil was allotted to them; on the other hand, the failure or partial failure of an expedition was the signal for the massacre of half the men with the most cold-blooded cruelty. The Zulu soldier knew that he must either as

"Victor exult, or in death be laid low"

by the spear of his foe or ignominiously on his return, as "a man who had dared to fly."

Chaka ruled by terror only. Life and death depended on his caprice. His striking personal appearance, his iron will, and the reputation which he had of being more than human, compelled the submission and fear of his people. From his relentless cruelty and ferocity he has been called the "Hyena-Man." His immense size gained him the designation of "Great Elephant," and the royal kraal on the Umfolosi was thence known as **Umgungundhlovu,** *the place of the great elephant*, a name naturally transferred in after years by the natives to **Maritzburg,** the Umgungundhlovu or seat of government of the white man.

## Chaka's Conquests.

The tribes south of the Tugela soon began to suffer from the new military power which had sprung up in the north.

The **Abatembu** and the **Amacunu,** living on the Lower Buffalo and the only remaining check to the extension of Chaka's power in that direction, were speedily attacked and driven south. These tribes caused much misery in their progress southward through the western part of Natal. The Natal natives had hitherto only played at fighting and were quite unable to cope with invaders whose proximity to Chaka had necessitated their acquiring some knowledge of aggressive warfare. Their huts were burned, and their corn and cattle seized by the passing freebooters. But worse days were in store for them. The tribes in the Tugela valley were the first exposed to Chaka's attack. Some fled to the south; others surrendered and were permitted to remain as vassals. When the Zulus burst upon the tribes in the valley of the Umvoti, the terrified people endeavoured to make their way south. Not strong enough singly, the tribes united and forced their way through, spreading death and desolation as they went. Self-preservation was the first thought, and all ancient friendships disappeared. Every man's hand was against his neighbour. By the time the dreaded Zulu army marched through the land the work of destruction was easily consummated. All live stock was captured, huts were burned, crops destroyed, and the wretched people speared without mercy. Before the feet of Chaka's impis the land was like the garden of Eden, and behind them a desolate wilderness. Only those escaped who were able in time to flee their kraals and betake themselves to secret defiles in the mountains or to recesses of the forest. Many of the tribes which had fled before the Zulus were overtaken by Chaka and destroyed. The young men had the choice of death or enlistment in the army of the conqueror. Thousands escaped the spear by boldly penetrating into the country beyond the **Umzimvubu**

and throwing themselves on the mercy of the frontier kafirs.

Chaka at the zenith of his power had a force of nearly 100,000 warriors, called the Zulu army, but in reality composed of men from nearly every tribe **between Delagoa Bay and St. John's River.** He added half-a-million of alien people to the Zulu nation Only the fever-haunted swamps along the Maputa River and the fear of a collision with the Cape colonists prevented Chaka from extending his sway further north and south. Within these boundaries he was supreme. No human dwelling was allowed south of the **Itongati** or **Tongaat** River. Only the herdsmen of the royal cattle could roam as far as the **Umzimkulu.** The people he permitted to live were kept under his own eye. By banishing the conquered natives from their ancient homes and by murdering their chiefs, Chaka hoped to destroy all their tribal associations and in time to make them Zulus in feeling as well as in name. During his reign of terror Chaka is calculated to have destroyed 300 tribes and extended his power 500 miles north, south, and west. He, in truth, "waded through slaughter to a throne, and shut the gates of mercy on mankind."

## Natal Desolate.

The **devastation of Natal** was complete about the year 1820. Remnants of some of the tribes yet lingered in the country and found hiding-places in the dense bush of the river valleys and in the gorges of the mountains. But their condition was most pitiable. Most of them had escaped the assegai only to perish by hunger. It was hazardous to cultivate their mealie gardens, for there was the danger of being seen by a Zulu impi if they ventured to stay too long in the open ground. So long as their dogs, the only domestic

animal remaining to them, were fairly well fed, the wretched people could still capture game. Even that resource, however, soon failed them. The dogs were starved, could not hunt, and were then killed and eaten. For years thousands of people must have subsisted on roots, some of them of a poisonous nature. One species—an "insane root, that takes the reason prisoner"—could not be eaten with safety until it had been boiled twenty-four hours. If that precaution were not observed, insanity was the dreadful consequence. In that state the poor creatures would throw themselves over precipices or become the prey of the hyena and the panther. Hyenas became so bold as to attack men and women and carry off children. The **Amatuli** were reduced to such straits by hunger that they took to eating fish, an abomination to all other kafir tribes. Their cattle were all taken and their crops destroyed, but, although the tribe dwindled down to a very small number, they never left their ancient residence on the Bluff.

To add to the horrors of that unhappy period, a man of the Amadunge tribe named **Undava** began the disgusting practice of eating human flesh. He soon collected a band of natives from his own and other tribes who hunted the country for human beings as tigers do for their prey. They began it from necessity and continued it from choice. The Amadunge chief himself was one of their victims. **Cannibalism** continued to be practised until Dingaan drove the last of the man-eaters from the Biggarsberg, about the time of the arrival of the Dutch farmers.

## Nomsimekwana's Escape.

**Nomsimekwana,** the chief of the **Amanyamvu,** told Sir Theophilus Shepstone many years ago how he had escaped from the cannibals when he was a boy. In the

absence of the men of the tribe who had gone to search for food, Undava's band of cannibals made a raid on the Amanyamvu and carried off Nomsimekwana with some women and children. The cannibals drove the captives up the Umsunduzi valley. They made Nomsimekwana carry a flat-shaped pot and told him it would serve as a lid to the one in which he should be cooked. As the party was passing a deep reach of the river swarming with hippopotami just below **Bishopstowe,** Nomsimekwana darted from his captors and dived into the water. The cannibals threw their assegais after him but fortunately missed him. He hid himself in the reeds till his pursuers were gone. The young chief had sad news to tell the men who had been away seeking for food for their wives and children. The desolate cave in which they took refuge was more desolate than ever, and the men determined to join the Zulu people, with whom they would at least be sure of food.

## The Amanyamvu.

The history of Nomsimekwana's people is the history of many another Natal tribe. The **Amanyamvu** lived on the right bank of the **Umgeni below Table Mountain,** and the facilities for concealment afforded by that rugged country enabled a remnant of the tribe to successfully defy the Zulu assegais. They were attacked by Chaka's army and many of the tribe killed. Some were driven south and scattered among other tribes. The numbers of those who clung to their old home through all vicissitudes were gradually thinned by the ravages of starvation, of wild beasts, and of equally fierce man-eaters in human form. They at length abandoned their country and joined a tribe in the Tugela valley tributary to Chaka. Many of the Amanyamvu were soldiers in the Zulu army and perished from fever near Delagoa Bay. In the time of Dingaan, the chief Nomsimek-

wana made his way back to Table Mountain where he was joined at intervals by his people from the Zulu country and elsewhere.

After all the turns of Fortune's wheel, the Amanyamvu, under their old chief Nomsimekwana, are again in their ancient home near Table Mountain where they had lived for hundreds of years before Chaka swept across the land.

## The Fingoes.

Many thousands of the **Natal kafirs** of all tribes, fleeing before the invading hordes from the north, took refuge with the Amaxosa and other kafirs on the Cape frontier. They were starving and homeless, and the expression used by the first refugees when begging for food and shelter—"Fenguza," *we are pedlars*—obtained for them all the name of **Amafengu** or **Fingoes.** The Fingoes immediately passed into a state of servitude to the frontier kafirs resembling that of the Laconian helots. They did not come of a race that would suffer slavery gladly, and they took every opportunity of freeing themselves. They have always been firm allies of the English. In the frontier war of 1834 when **Hintza,** the Galeka chief, was defeated, the Fingoes remained neutral. As an acknowledgment of their friendly attitude, 16,000 of them were formally released from bondage by **Sir Benjamin D'Urban,** the Governor of the Cape, and settled on land given them on the lower part of the Great Fish River. They were afterwards removed north of the Kei River to the district now called **Fingo Land.**

| | |
|---|---|
| CHAKA BEGAN HIS REIGN OF TERROR ... ... | 1818 |
| NATAL DEVASTATED ... ... ... ... | 1820 |
| FINGOES RELEASED FROM BONDAGE ... ... | 1834 |

## CHAPTER V.

### *THE EARLY ENGLISH SETTLERS.*

### Lieutenant Farewell.

The English flag was flying from the Castle at Capetown while Chaka pursued his career of conquest and all Natal lay prostrate at his feet. But no Englishman had penetrated beyond the land of the frontier Kafirs. Grahamstown, south of the Great Fish River, at first only a military station, was the outpost of civilisation in that part of South Africa. After the Dutch ceased to trade on the coast, the Bay of Natal was no longer a regular place of call. Nearly a century had elapsed since any vessel had sailed under the Bluff when, in 1823, the brig **Salisbury**, with **Lieutenant Farewell** on board, anchored in the harbour. Farewell was an officer who had served in the Royal Marines, and had been on a trading trip near Delagoa Bay. He heard that a profitable trade might be opened up with the Zulus, and he called at Natal to satisfy himself regarding the capabilities of the country and the friendliness of its natives. The prospects of the enterprise appeared encouraging, and on his return to Capetown he persuaded about twenty adventurous spirits to join him in his expedition to the land of Natal. **Lord Charles Somerset,** the Governor of the Cape, gave his consent to the undertaking, with his wishes for its success in advancing trade and civilisation. In 1824 the little band of Englishmen came to Natal, and they came to stay. **Lieutenant Farewell, Mr. Henry Fynn,** and **Lieutenant King,**

were the recognised leaders. **Isaacs, Cane, Ogle,** and **Biggar** were also well-known names among the pioneers.

**Salisbury Island,** in the Bay, commemorates the ship which first brought Farewell to Natal.

## Chaka and the English Settlers.

The great King of the Zulus was very gracious to the Englishmen. Dingiswayo's account of the Cape and of the military power of the people who owned it was still fresh in his memory. **Fynn, Farewell, and King** visited him at his military kraal between Tongaat and Umhlali. As a preliminary to further negotiations, there was an interchange of presents, consisting of copper and beads on the one side, and oxen and ivory on the other. Twelve thousand Zulus in war-dress surrounded the kraal when the Englishmen arrived. The king's cattle in thousands were paraded before the visitors, and a war-dance in which 25,000 men and women took part was performed for their entertainment. Chaka informed them that he was the greatest king in existence, that his people were as the stars in number, and his riches in cattle incalculable. In high good humour, for his listeners did not dare to combat his arguments, he ridiculed English habits and customs, being especially severe on the folly of converting hides into such unnecessary articles as shoes when shields were much more handsome and useful. But he paid all respect to the trio and gave them and their followers full permission to settle at the Bay and trade as they pleased. He formally **ceded to them a tract of land extending 25 miles along the coast, including the Bay and 100 miles inland.** The sickening scenes of cruelty which the Englishmen were forced to witness during subsequent visits to Chaka unhappily gave them many opportunities of observing the

other and ferocious side of the character of the Zulu despot.

## The White Chiefs.

A grant of land being thus made by Chaka, each of the leaders selected a separate station for himself and his followers. The ground now occupied by the **Town Gardens of Durban** was **Farewell's** camp; **King** chose the part of **the Bluff** opposite the island; and **Fynn** established himself on the **Umbilo,** at the head of the Bay. The Englishmen found the Bluff inhabited by a handful of natives of the **Amatuli** tribe under their chief **Umnini.** They had remained there through all the miseries of Chaka's invasion, barely existing on roots and shellfish. The newcomers were at first viewed with distrust and alarm by these wretched creatures. No ship or white man had been seen there for a generation. Two or three years before when a shipwrecked sailor had sought refuge among the **Amaqwabe,** the chief had put him to death, believing that he belonged to a family of sea-monsters who had their dwellings in ships and who subsisted on salt water and on ivory obtained from the shore. But in a short time the Englishmen, by their friendly demeanour and kind treatment, succeeded in gaining the confidence of the hunted and starving natives; and the three camps were soon known far and near as havens of refuge where food and protection could always be found. Many men under the displeasure of Chaka contrived to escape and fled to the English settlement at the Bay. Chaka was aware of these desertions, but he regarded them with lofty toleration. "They have gone to my friends," he said, "not to my enemies." In the course of a few years a large number of natives from various Natal tribes had congregated at the

Bay and transferred their allegiance to the white chiefs who had succoured and protected them in their distress.

## Matiwana.

The **Amangwana** tribe under **Matiwana**, which had been driven across the Buffalo by Dingiswayo about 1812, settled in the wild country south of the Upper Tugela. There they lived undisturbed till 1828, when a determined attack was made on them by **Chaka**. Some fled towards the Bushman River and became homeless wanderers. A numerous section of the tribe went across the Drakensberg with their chief Matiwana and took to a life of lawless violence. Joined by desperadoes like themselves, they carried desolation into the peaceful valleys of **Lesuto**, the home of the then unwarlike Basutos, as Chaka had done into Natal. **Moshesh**, at that time a petty Basuto chief, successfully resisted Matiwana and his warriors. At the height of the struggle he took refuge in his natural stronghold of **Thaba Bosigo**, *the Dark Mountain*, about six miles from the Caledon River. He tired out Matiwana by his passive resistance, and that daring freebooter, re-crossing the Berg further to the south, sought a new field of conquest among the frontier kafirs of the Cape, who styled his marauding hordes **Fetcani** or *banditti*. The Tembu and Galeka tribes seemed to be threatened with destruction, and a combined force of English red-coats and burghers was sent to aid the kafirs against Matiwana's savages. Near the **Umtata**, the band of Fetcani was utterly routed, and Matiwana with a few followers fled north to throw himself on the mercy of Chaka. But the great Zulu King was dead when the Amangwana chief arrived at the royal kraal, and Matiwana fell into evil hands. By order of **Dingaan**, the murderer and successor of Chaka, he was cruelly put to death. The scattered

Amangwana people, like so many others, gathered together in later years after the revolt of **Panda,** and now occupy under **Ncwadi,** the grandson of Matiwana, the same country along the Little Berg from which they were expelled by Chaka in 1828.

## Moselekatse.

Among Chaka's generals there was one **Umsilikazi,** better known as **Moselekatse,** who had been a petty chief under Zwide. In ambition and talent for military organisation he was second to none but his mighty chief. Chafing under control, and burning to found a great nation for himself, he broke away from Chaka in 1826, and at the head of an army who had deserted with him crossed the Drakensberg into what is now the Transvaal. He carried fire and sword among the peaceful **Bechuana** tribes, who either fled before him or were incorporated as his subjects. **Moshesh, the Basuto chief,** had hardly time to get his scattered people into order after Matiwana's retreat, when Thaba Bosigo was attacked by the hosts of Moselekatse. But the storm of stones and assegais with which they were met from the heights completely daunted the assailants, and they left the country of Moshesh with a clearer idea of his power. When they were moving away, Moshesh sent them a present of fat oxen, saying he supposed it was hunger which had brought them to Lesuto, and he sent them the cattle to eat on their way home. It was Moselekatse who fell on the Dutch farmers near the Vaal River in 1836 as they trekked northward to Natal. Some years later he was forced to flee before the muskets of the Boers when they spread themselves over the Transvaal. Retreating north of the Limpopo, he subjugated the native tribes in that region, the **Mashona** and **Makalaka,** and established the **Matabele**

kingdom now ruled over by his son and successor, **Lobengula.** Moselekatse died in 1870.

## Death of Lieutenant King.

The Englishmen at the Bay succeeded in building a small schooner intended to ply for trading purposes between Natal and Port Elizabeth. She was launched in 1828, and named the **Chaka.** She sailed at once for Algoa Bay with King, Farewell, and Isaacs on board. With them went two of Chaka's indunas. That sable potentate desired to enter into a friendly alliance with King George, and it was hoped that his ambassadors would be sent on to England by the Governor of the Cape. The journey to Port Elizabeth was a disappointment to white and black alike. The Chaka was frowned upon by the authorities as being unregistered and coming from a foreign port. And the communications received from Capetown indicated that the views entertained by His Majesty's representative there with regard to an alliance with the King of the Zulus did not savour of enthusiasm. The result was that the Chaka was confiscated and allowed to rot at Port Elizabeth, and the whole party was sent back to Natal in the war-sloop Helicon. **Lieutenant King** took seriously ill after his return, and the chagrin and disappointment caused by the untoward sequel to the Chaka's voyage did not tend to his recovery. He died at his camp on the Bluff, and is buried there. The Cape Government had sent presents to the Zulu King, but he thought them inadequate, and his self-importance was ruffled by the cold reception accorded to his headmen. Any serious consequences which might have befallen the English settlers from the despot's offended dignity were prevented by his violent and unexpected death.

## The End of Chaka.

Chaka had moved one of his military kraals, **Dukuza,** to near the Lower Umvoti. There, where the village of Stanger now stands, he was murdered in 1828 by his brothers **Dingaan** and **Mahlangana**, with the connivance of Umbopu, his confidential servant. Shortly before his death an army had returned from an unsuccessful expedition against the Amapondo, and was at once ordered off without rest to punish a contumacious chief near Delagoa Bay. In the absence of the men, Chaka assumed the office of a "dream-doctor," and three or four hundred women were brutally murdered to gratify his taste for bloodshed. While giving audience shortly afterwards to some men who had brought him cranes' feathers, Mahlangana crept up behind him and stabbed him in the back. Dingaan then rushed at him with his assegai, and Chaka fell covered with wounds. It is said that "the sunset of life gave him mystical lore," for as he felt his life-blood ebbing away he exclaimed to his murderers "You think you will rule this land when I am gone; but I see the white man coming, and he will be your master." **Chaka** lies buried at Dukuza where he fell. He lived by the sword and he perished by the sword. No more merciless monster stains the pages of history.

## Dingaan.

**Dingaan** at once assumed the chieftainship. He lacked much of Chaka's ability, but he was his equal in cruelty, and he excelled him in cunning and treachery. Mahlangana and another brother, who were supposed to aim at supreme power, were put out of the way. The army which had been sent to Delagoa Bay came back in a miserable plight—defeated, and enfeebled by sickness and famine. The men were pardoned, but the general was put

to death. Dingaan made his permanent residence at **Umgungundhlovu** on the White Umfolosi, about 160 miles from the Bay. At first it seemed as if the English settlement had found favour in the sight of the new despot, for he despatched John Cane with a message of friendship to the authorities at Grahamstown. On Cane's return, the presents he brought were forwarded by natives to the royal kraal. Thereupon Dingaan summoned Fynn and Cane to his presence. The Englishmen had by that time acquired considerable knowledge of native ways, and declined to obey the summons. They knew it was the policy of new chiefs to cut off the friends and supporters of their predecessors, and that Dingaan was specially incensed at the number of deserters from his rule whom they shielded and harboured. Knowing what to expect after their refusal to appear at Umgungundhlovu, **Fynn** and **Cane**, with all their people, white and black, took flight and never stopped till the Umzimkulu flowed between them and Dingaan. The Zulu impi was close upon them. The Zulus captured some of the Englishmen's cattle, and on their way back laid waste the settlement at the Bay. Dingaan's wrath was short-lived. In 1831 he prevailed on the white traders to return, and he declared Fynn "Great Chief of the Natal Kafirs."

## Deserters from Dingaan.

As early as 1827, refugees from the Zulu power had made their way to the Bay settlement. After the accession of Dingaan, desertions became more frequent. It needed Chaka's iron will and the terror of his name to keep together a people like the so-called Zulus, composed of every tribe from King George's River to St. John's. The tribes and remnants of tribes not actually incorporated

with the Zulus were allowed to occupy the land as far south as the Tongaat and along the coast to the Umgeni by paying tribute to the Zulu King. Their populations had been greatly increased by the number of natives drawn to them by hunger and misery. Discontent and disloyalty soon began to show themselves among these tribes. Dingaan at once took measures to quell this rising spirit of revolt. The hereditary chiefs were put to death and officers of his own choosing, called "**captains of kraals,**" were placed in authority. The fiery spirits of the tribes were drafted into the regular army. One of the largest clans, the **Amaqwabe,** fled in a body to Amapondo Land under their chief **Qeto**. Dingaan pursued them in vain, and sent two spies to the Umzimvubu to watch their movements. Suspecting that the coast kafirs harboured runaways and aided them in passing on to the south, Dingaan ordered the depopulation of the coast belt as far north as the Tugela, and extending about 45 miles from its mouth. The right bank of that river was thus to be occupied only as far down as Krans Kop. Despite these precautions, homesick and discontented natives took every opportunity of returning to their own land. There, doubtless, they found help and sympathy from the thousands of natives who, in the natural strongholds and hiding-places with which the country abounds, defied Dingaan's edict of expatriation.

## Murder of Lieutenant Farewell.

Though communication by sea was soon renewed with Algoa Bay, the loss of the schooner Chaka had meanwhile obliged the English traders to open up a road overland for the conveyance of their produce to Grahamstown. **Lieutenant Farewell** was returning by that route in 1831, when he was cruelly murdered by **Qeto,** the Amaqwabe

chief who had fled from Dingaan. The **Amapondo** chief, **Faku,** warned Farewell against his intended visit to the Amaqwabe, as Qeto would be sure to recognise one of Dingaan's spies who was with the party. But Farewell disregarded the warning and went. Qeto detected the spy although he was disguised with a great-coat, and was incensed accordingly. He cast a covetous eye also on the merchandise of the traders, which he knew was going to enrich his hated enemy Dingaan. In the night the tent of Farewell and his companions was surrounded and the whole party murdered.

The Amaqwabe chief himself met the fate he had basely meted out to his unsuspecting guests. He was ultimately driven from the Umzimvubu by Faku, and after enduring much misery, wandered back with some of his people into Natal, where he was betrayed to his ruthless enemy Dingaan and put to death. The tribe was dispersed. It re-assembled, however, after Panda's revolt, and is now in its ancient residence on the Lower Tugela to the number of about twenty thousand.

## Henry Fynn.

By the death of King and Farewell, **Mr. Henry Fynn** was left the sole survivor of the dauntless three who had carried their lives in their hands as the pioneers of English trade and English influence in Natal. The Bay settlement suffered another loss when he left in 1834 to take up an appointment under the Cape Government. The authorities there found his thorough knowledge of native language and customs of the greatest service. **Cane** and **Ogle** then assumed direction of affairs at the Bay. Mr. Fynn afterwards returned to Natal, and was for many years a Resident Magistrate after English rule was established.

## Captain Allen Gardiner.

In 1835 **Captain Allen Gardiner**, of the Royal Navy, joined the little colony by the Bay side. A man of great piety, he came to Natal in the hope of establishing a mission among the Zulus. He went to Dingaan at Umgungundhlovu to obtain his consent. The King and two of his indunas listened patiently to Captain Gardiner while he explained to them the blessings attendant on Christianity, but they were obviously not impressed with his discourse. Dingaan announced that his words were beyond their comprehension, but that he might stay if he could instruct his men in the use of the musket. The King had, however, no objection to his teaching the natives gathered round the English settlers. On his return from this fruitless visit to Dingaan, the residents at the Bay asked Captain Gardiner to begin a mission for "the promotion of religion and industry," and guaranteed him their hearty support. When the mission church was built on the bush-covered heights overlooking the Bay, and near to where St. Thomas's Church now stands, Captain Gardiner named the hill **Berea,** in gratitude for having found the traders "more hospitable than they of" Umgungundhlovu.

Captain Gardiner entered into a treaty with Dingaan in which that potentate pardoned all the natives who had deserted him and were with the white men, but stipulated for the return of all runaways who should seek refuge after the date of the agreement. The latter part of the treaty was observed once, and only once. On that occasion some miserable fugitives who were sent back were tortured to death by starvation. After that, all refugees were at once passed down south out of Dingaan's reach.

In 1837 Captain Gardiner returned from a visit to England. **Mr. Owen,** a clergyman sent out by the Church

Missionary Society, came with him, and was stationed by Dingaan's permission at the royal village of Umgungundhlovu. While in England Captain Gardiner was officially commissioned to exercise jurisdiction over the affairs of the trading settlement, but none of the residents would acknowledge his authority. He received no encouragement when he forwarded a complaint regarding their insubordination to Sir Benjamin D'Urban, the Governor of the Cape. The English Government, he was informed, had no wish to impose any duties on Captain Gardiner should he find that they had "no good practical result." At the same time the settlers at Port Natal were still considered subjects of the Queen.

The brave sailor-missionary left Natal shortly afterwards. He perished miserably by starvation in 1852 on the inhospitable shores of Patagonia, whither he and some fellow-workers had gone on a rash and perilous mission expedition.

## Durban.

The settlement of English hunters and traders at the Bay was eleven years old when, in respect to their increasing numbers, it was resolved to lay out a township "between the River Avon and the Buffalo Spring." The River Avon is thought to be the Umbilo, and the Buffalo Spring is probably the natural fountain, now covered in, near the corner of Smith and Field Streets, where at one time ships regularly obtained supplies of fresh water. The site of the future town was a dense jungle varied by tracts of greensward, naturally ornamented by large trees, and not yet cut up by traffic into beds of deep sand. Shy antelopes bounded from covert to covert, countless monkeys chattered in wooded shades and swung themselves from the creepers, and the huge *spoor* of the elephant was a familiar sight in the winding bush paths. There was only one square house in the

settlement, and that was constructed of the handiest materials, reeds plastered with mud—in colonial parlance, "wattle and daub." This mansion was owned by Mr. Collis. The other inhabitants resided, like their native vassals, in the more modest beehive-shaped straw huts. The huts were built in secluded parts of the bush for safety, for the favour of Dingaan was precarious, and at any time the settlement might have experienced the fell swoop of a Zulu impi.

With about 3,000 kafirs at their beck and call, the settlers felt that they might safely give up this semi-savage way of living, and gradually adopt one more in accordance with the dignity of an English community. Accordingly, at a public meeting held on the 23rd June, 1835, and attended by seventeen residents, one of them **Richard King**, afterwards famous, resolutions were agreed to regarding the laying-out of the township and the founding of a colony. The town to be built was named **D'Urban,** in honour of His Excellency the Governor of the Cape. The infant colony, which they proposed should extend from the Tugela to the Umzimkulu, was in compliment to the youthful Princess called **Victoria.** Every inhabitant was to receive an allotment of land on which he should erect a house within eighteen months. No kafir hut was to be allowed within the township. Three thousand acres of land on the "River Avon" were set apart for Church lands and the endowment of a clergyman of the Church of England; and a site was chosen for a free school, two thousand acres of land on the Umkomaas being reserved for its support. A public hospital and a cemetery were not forgotten. A town-committee was elected at the meeting, and a subscription list was opened for "clearing the bush and other necessary improvements." The members of this first Durban

Town Council were Captain Gardiner and Messrs. Collis, Berkin, Cane, and Ogle. The householders forwarded a petition to **Sir Benjamin D'Urban** embodying their resolutions, and praying the English Government to recognise the Colony of Victoria and to appoint a Governor and Council. No official response was made to their prayer. Sir Benjamin D'Urban acknowledged the compliment paid to himself in the naming of the township by forwarding £50 to aid in the erection of a church.

That was the beginning of Durban 55 years ago.

When **Mr. Archbell,** of the Wesleyan Mission, visited Durban in 1841, little had been done to give effect to the resolutions passed at the public meeting six years before. Primeval bush was still the leading feature of the township. But Mr. Archbell saw in its magnificent position, in the abundance of fuel and timber, and in its proximity to two large rivers, the Umgeni and the Umlaas—both assured sources of water supply—promises of future greatness; and he felt justified in asserting that only time was wanting to transform Durban into "the most populous and delightfully-situated town on the coast of Africa." After the lapse of half a century his prediction seems in a fair way of being fulfilled.

## The American Missionaries.

In the last month of 1834 a devoted band of missionaries embarked at **Boston** to prosecute a mission among the "Zulus of South Eastern Africa." They were **Mr. Lindley, Mr. Wilson, and Mr. Venable; Dr. Adams, Mr. Grout, and Mr. Champion,** with their wives and families. The first three landed at Capetown and proceeded far into the interior. Dr. Adams and his companions were under orders for Port Natal, whence their operations were to extend among the coast tribes. These messengers of

peace and goodwill arrived at Durban from Algoa Bay in December, 1835, in a small coaster with the appropriate name of the **Dove.** After a few weeks spent among the strange and charming scenery of the Bay, the missionaries proceeded by wagon to Umgungundhlovu. They found it little else than a camp of soldiers. The making of shields was the chief occupation of the people; bloodshed and pillage the burden of their talk. Dingaan, arrayed in a mantle and turban of red plush, presented to him by Captain Gardiner, received the missionaries very graciously. But he told them that he preferred white men to remain south of the Tugela, and that he doubted their ability to teach his people to read and write. He, however, as an experiment, gave the missionaries leave to begin a school on the **Umhlatoos.** A station was accordingly established on that river. In the troublous times of Dingaan's wars with the Dutch farmers, the missionaries came further south and settled in Natal. Here for over half a century they and their successors have, with unwearying zeal, laboured to leaven the mass of barbarism around them. Three pioneers of the mission, **Grout, Lindley,** and **Adams,** are commemorated in the names of large native villages founded by them at Umvoti, Inanda, and Amanzamtoti, in 1844, 1847, and 1848 respectively.

| | |
|---|---|
| First English settlers arrive in Natal ... | 1824 |
| Moselekatse deserts from Chaka ... ... | 1826 |
| Natal kafirs begin to return ... ... | 1827 |
| Death of Chaka ... ... ... ... | 1828 |
| Lieutenant Farewell murdered ... ... | 1831 |
| Henry Fynn leaves Natal... ... ... | 1834 |
| Captain Allen Gardiner's arrival ... ... | 1835 |
| Durban first laid out ... ... ... | 1835 |
| First arrival of American missionaries ... | 1835 |

## CHAPTER VI.

### *THE DUTCH FARMERS.*

#### "To Spy out the Land."

In 1834 Sir Benjamin D'Urban received a petition from a large number of merchants and others in Capetown for transmission to King William praying that a settlement might be formed at **Natal.** The petition stated that Natal was a dependency of the Cape Colony, inasmuch as it was purchased by the Dutch East India Company. It also set forth the excellence of the climate, the productiveness of the country, the certainty of a large trade, the peaceableness of the natives, the necessity of protecting the traders then in Natal and the frontier tribes of the Cape from attacks by the Zulus, and the influence such a settlement would have in civilising the tribes on its borders. The petition was not favourably entertained. The English Government replied that the Cape finances would not allow of the establishment of a new dependency.

Although the petition was disregarded, the great interest taken in the unknown land under the Berg was kept up among both English and Dutch colonists by the glowing descriptions of traders and hunters. The Dutch farmers were at that time in a state of great discontent with the Government and filled with a desire to seek a new land beyond its control. Natal seemed to them the Canaan of their hopes, and, like the Israelites of old, they sent out men "to search the land." Fourteen wagons started from Uitenhage under the charge of **Uys, Maritz, De Lange,**

and **Rudolph,** and proceeding through Kafirland and along the base of the Berg arrived in due time at the Bay of Natal. They were cordially welcomed by the English traders, who, however, were somewhat surprised at their sudden appearance. The newcomers stayed for a time hunting and shooting, and then returned by the way they came. Their departure was hastened by the news that hordes of kafirs under Macomo and Hintza had invaded the Cape Colony. The Dutch farmers, like the Jewish explorers, reported to their fellows that Natal was a "good" land, a land fair to see, of green pastures and sparkling streams, "a land flowing with milk and honey." But the project of emigration had to wait until the confusion and bloodshed of the Kafir war were over.

## Causes of the Boer Exodus.

The Kafir outbreak was quelled, chiefly by the exertions of **Colonel Smith,** afterwards Sir Harry Smith, and the colonial border was extended to the Kei River. Magistrates were appointed over the conquered territory, and 16,000 **Fingoes,** remnants of fugitive Natal tribes, were formally liberated and located on the Fish River. **Sir Theophilus Shepstone** was present when these helots were set free by Sir Benjamin D'Urban. The new province was named **Adelaide,** and its chief settlement, **King William's Town.** It seemed as if civilisation had made a stride forward on the Cape frontier. The English Government, however, did not approve of Sir Benjamin D'Urban's action in annexing the territory. **Lord Glenelg,** then Secretary of State, in a despatch dated December, 1835, accused the colonists of having brought on the Kafir war by their inhuman and unjust treatment of the natives, and peremptorily ordered the conquered province to be restored to its

original owners. The consequence was that the kafirs swarmed back towards the Great Fish River, and security of life and property in that district was again at an end. Lord Glenelg's despatch caused great indignation in the colony, and intensified the feeling against English rule among the frontier farmers. Fifty of their number had been slain, their homesteads had been burned, and their cattle and sheep carried off by the invading savages. Their wagons and oxen and horses had been taken for service in the field. They were the sufferers, not the aggressors, and with the reversal of Sir Benjamin D'Urban's policy, their scattered homesteads were thenceforth never safe from attack.

Another settled cause of discontent was the **abolition of slavery** in 1833. Ever since Van Riebeek ruled at the Cape, the freed burghers had been accustomed to reckon slaves as part of their property. Besides Hottentots and Bushmen, they had as slaves Malays, natives of Madagascar, and negroes from all parts of the coast, imported for them by the Government. The great Slave Emancipation Law took effect in all British colonies in 1834, but for reasons of convenience the freed slaves remained with their former owners as apprenticed labourers until the 1st of December, 1838. Meanwhile slave-owners received money compensation for the loss of their "property." The granting of liberty to the slaves gave great offence to the boers. They entirely disapproved of blacks "being placed on an equal footing with Christians, contrary to the natural distinction of race and religion." And they deemed the money which they received in lieu of their slaves wholly inadequate.

The want of adequate protection against the depredations of the frontier kafirs, and the losses sustained, and the resentment caused, by the emancipation of the slaves were the chief reasons which in 1836 led to a **large emigration of**

**Dutch farmers** beyond the borders of the Cape Colony. They were generally dissatisfied with English rule, and their imaginations were excited by the thought of finding in the dim interior the freedom for which they sighed. This exodus was mainly the outcome of long years of nomadic habits, begun and strongly manifested long ere the Cape had become an English possession.

## The Great Northward Trek.

The great trek soon began. Selling their farms, often far below their value, and taking with them their wagons and oxen, their horses, their herds of cattle and flocks of sheep, the farmers commenced their march into the wilderness. They went in various parties and at different times. From 5,000 to 10,000 people are believed to have left the colony in 1836 and 1837. No opposition to their departure was made by the Government. A large detachment which left at the close of 1836 chose **Pieter Retief** as their leader. He was descended from a Huguenot family, a field-commandant in the Winterberg district, and a man of great influence among his countrymen. Before crossing the Orange River, he signed a declaration in the name of the emigrants, detailing the reasons which moved them to forsake their mother country, and asserting their independence thenceforth of the English Government. The document avowed the desire of the emigrants to live in peace with the native tribes they might meet on their journey and in the land in which they might settle. Other men of mark among the *voortrekkers* were **Maritz, Uys, Potgieter, Rudolph, Landman,** and **Celliers**. These boer leaders were grave stern men, imbued with the spirit of the Dutch burghers who defeated Alva, and of the Huguenots who fought under Condé. The Bible was their only literature. No important

undertaking was ever entered upon without prayer and praise being offered to the Almighty. Like the Puritans, they had as much faith in the psalm as in the pike-point.

The emigrants **crossed the Orange** partly at Aliwal North, partly nearer Colesberg, and the immense cavalcade proceeded slowly along the endless plains which slope westward from the summit of the Berg. Apprehension of attack from the frontier kafirs led the boers to avoid the route along the base of the mountains. The monotony of the level country along which their wagons toiled was broken only by an occasional flat-topped hill rising abruptly from the plain and by herds of springbok and blesbok, wildebeest and hartebeest, eland and quagga, in such numbers as almost to obscure the landscape. Fiercer beasts were also encountered. Two hundred lions were killed during the trek. The Basuto chief, **Moshesh,** held parley with the white men now and then, and offered no obstruction to their progress. Near **Thaba 'Nchu,** a high rugged mountain, the stronghold of the Barolong chief, the emigrants halted. There they found some of the advance parties waiting for the main body. Impatient of delay, two or three families had gone on under the guidance of **Rensburg** and **Trichard.** The former and all his followers were murdered by the "Knob-nosed" kafirs. Trichard's people found their way to Delagoa Bay, where nearly all the men died of fever. The survivors, mostly women and children, were brought to Natal in 1839 by Mr. Geo. C. Cato.

## The First Fight.

South of the Vaal River, and near the present town of Kronstadt, two small detached parties of emigrants were attacked by the fierce warriors of **Moselekatse.** The wagons with possible booty of all kinds, and the cattle,

sheep, and horses, seemed a rare prize to these desert robbers who roamed about seeking what they might devour. The emigrants were quite unprepared, and they were nearly all murdered. The few who escaped warned the scattered parties coming on behind of the terrible danger in front. Hasty preparations were made for Moselekatse's reception by **Charl Celliers,** who, like Cromwell's troopers, could fight as well as pray. The wagons were drawn up in square, and thus formed a fortified place or *laager.* Mimosa or thorn bushes were placed in the gaps under and between the wagons and interlaced in the spokes of the wheels. The women and children were put under cover in wagons in the middle of the laager, but in the thick of the fight the women came out to help the men. Moselekatse's kafirs advanced on the camp in three divisions. The Dutchmen opened fire at about thirty yards. In spite of the deadly shower of bullets, the assailants threw themselves against the wagons in their endeavour to take the camp by storm. When any kafir succeeded in creeping through the thorn enclosure he was killed by the women, armed with knives and hatchets, before he could gain his feet. Men and women alike fought with the courage of despair. The enemy at last retired, leaving over four hundred of their number dead around the camp. Two Dutchmen were killed and several wounded. The canvas covers of the wagons which formed the outward wall of the laager were rent and torn with assegai stabs, and 1,172 of those weapons were found within the camp when the fight was over.

## Moselekatse's Kraal.

In January, 1837, to avenge their murdered comrades, a commando of over a hundred men under Maritz and Potgieter rode across the Vaal and attacked Moselekatse's

kraal of **Mosega**. They inflicted a severe defeat on that lawless robber. Hundreds of his warriors fell beneath the boers' muskets; and the wagons and cattle stolen from the murdered farmers were recovered. At Mosega the boers found Mr. Lindley, Mr. Venable, and Mr. Wilson, with their wives—the American missionaries who had found their way to that remote region from Capetown. Suffering from fever, and suspicious of the good faith of Moselekatse, the missionaries deemed it prudent to leave Mosega and return with the farmers to their encampment on the Sand River.

The successive attacks by Moselekatse impressed on the farmers the necessity of closer union and measures for combined defence. Every camp was therefore placed under a commandant, and laws were made for the safety and order of the community. **Pieter Retief** was elected **Governor,** and **Gert Maritz, President of the Volksraad,** or Council of the People.

## Down the Berg.

When the farmers started from Cape Colony, they imagined that the only way down into Natal was round the northmost end of the great mountain range. That route would have brought them out near Delagoa Bay. Some of their leaders, desirous of finding a shorter road, set out from Sand River to explore the part of the Berg nearest the encampment. They returned with the welcome intelligence that at five different points a way could be found down the lofty mountain wall into the "meadow of Natal." **Pieter Retief,** with fifteen men and four wagons preceded the main body of the emigrants and made his way to the Bay, where he arrived in October, 1837. He received an address of welcome from the traders, and after some correspondence with Dingaan relative to the emigrants

settling in Natal, he proceeded on horseback to Umgungundhlovu with five of his own men and Halstead, an Englishman, as interpreter. To the Dutchmen, the whole land of Natal seemed unoccupied. Riding along the highlands and open parts of the country, they had not seen a single native from the Berg to the sea. Only at the Port were any of the aboriginal owners of the soil evident, and they were gathered for protection round the handful of Englishmen. Of the tribes and remnants of tribes dwelling in forest, ravine, and river valley, the boers knew nothing. To them the land of Natal seemed tenantless; it belonged to Dingaan; and from Dingaan it must be obtained.

Meanwhile, about a thousand wagons with the main body of the emigrants and their flocks and herds had come down the wild natural passes of the Berg. The bulk of the people entered by **Bezuidenhout's Pass**; a few came by **Tintwa Pass,** and a few by **Olivier's Hoek Pass.** This colony proceeded to settle down in scattered encampments all **along the Tugela,** some to the north in the Klip River district, others and the larger number to the south, from the Little Tugela to the Mooi River.

## Umgungundhlovu.

The royal village of Dingaan, to which Retief and his companions journeyed, was built on the sloping bank of a rocky stream, a branch of the **White Umfolosi**. The king's kraal was oval in shape and several acres in extent. It was completely enclosed, except for two entrances, by a strong bush fence, and it contained, besides cattle kraals, the king's huts and about two thousand huts for his soldiers with a large open space in the middle for war-dances and parades. The huts were built within the fence six or eight deep, and were separated by another fence from

the parade ground. Here and there were huts raised from the ground, in which the shields of the warriors were preserved from insects. The royal huts were built in a kind of labyrinth at the upper end of the town, and the "palace" was merely a hut larger and grander than the others. It was twenty feet across and eight feet in height, and was supported by twenty-two pillars covered with beads of various colours. The floor shone like a mirror. The palace was surmounted by a crown, ingeniously constructed from twisted mats. Outside the royal kraal were several detached huts. In one of them lived Mr. Owen, the missionary, and his interpreter, Wood. Facing the door of their hut and on the further side of the kraal was a hill dotted with mimosa trees, the place of execution for Umgungundhlovu. There the victims of Dingaan's fury or caprice were dragged and murdered, and their bodies left to the hyenas and vultures. It was a hill of death.

## The Stolen Cattle.

Not till the third day after their arrival did the Zulu monarch give audience to Retief and his companions. During the first two days the greatest hospitality was shown to the guests, and sham-fights and parades of the troops were exhibited for their amusement. Dingaan received Retief with a smiling countenance and said they must be better acquainted. In reply to Retief's request for a grant of land, Dingaan said he did not understand how the Dutchmen could ask for such a favour when they had shot his people and stolen their cattle. A party of men dressed like boers and mounted on horses had, he said, attacked a kraal on the border of Zululand and driven off 300 cattle. Retief avowed his innocence of the raid and his belief that **Sikunyela, the Mantatee Chief,** was the

aggressor. Sikunyela's stronghold was in the **Wittebergen,** near the site of Harrismith, and he was a noted freebooter—the Rob Roy of the neighbourhood. Some of his men were clothed and had horses and guns. Dingaan then asked the Dutchmen to recover the cattle that he might be assured of their good faith and friendly feelings. Off rode Retief and his party westward to Sikunyela's country and decoyed that chief to an interview with them. As he sat on the ground, Bezuidenhout showed him a pair of handcuffs and asked him to admire the beautiful rings. Thereupon he closed them on Sikunyela's wrists, and the robber chieftain was a prisoner. To buy his liberty he at once surrendered the cattle taken from the Zulus. Retief and his men rode back in triumph to the boer encampment at **Doornkop,** by the Tugela. Everything now seemed favourable for negotiations with the Zulu King. Retief resolved to pay his second visit to Umgungundhlovu, with a body-guard of two hundred men, partly to impress Dingaan with a sense of the newcomers' power, partly to please him by some martial exercises. The other boers distrusted Dingaan and felt uneasy at Retief putting himself a second time into his power. Maritz generously offered to go himself, accompanied by only two or three, enough to be killed, he said, had Dingaan any sinister designs. At length Retief resolved to go, attended only by those who volunteered for the expedition. **Seventy horsemen,** including himself, with **thirty servants,** leading spare horses, rode forth from the encampment at the end of January, 1838, and they rode forth to their doom.

## The Stirrup Cup.

The boers celebrated their arrival at Umgungundhlovu by firing their muskets and charging each other on horse-

back. The Zulus engaged in a war-dance on a large scale. These compliments over, business was proceeded with. The cattle were restored; and **Dingaan** performed his part of the bargain by affixing his mark to a document drawn up by Mr. Owen, in which he **ceded to "Retief and his countrymen the place called Port Natal,** together with all the land annexed, that is to say from Tugela to the Umzimvubu River westward, and from the sea to the north." This land he gave them "for their everlasting property." Dingaan was kindness itself to the farmers, but something in his manner caused Wood, the interpreter, to feel uneasy, and he warned one or two of them to be on their guard. The morning of the 6th February arrived. The deed of cession was in Retief's leather hunting-pouch, and the Dutchmen were preparing to saddle-up and depart, when an invitation came from the king to drink *utywala* with him in his great place. They were asked to leave their muskets outside, as Zulu etiquette did not allow any weapon of war to be brought within the royal precincts. With that request the unsuspecting Dutchmen complied, and entered the parade ground to drink the stirrup-cup and to bid farewell to the king. Dingaan was seated at the upper end, and the ground was lined by two regiments armed with sticks. The treacherous savage wished Retief a pleasant journey to Natal, drank beer with him, and ordered his warriors to begin dancing and singing. This they did, gradually closing in on the doomed men. At the words "Kill the wizards!" uttered by Dingaan, the whole host threw themselves on the unfortunate farmers and felled them to the ground. Several of the boers had time to draw their clasp-knives, but it was a vain resistance. They were dragged from the king's presence to the hill of slaughter outside the town and there done to death with

knobbed sticks. Retief was kept alive till the end to witness the death of his comrades. Two Englishmen, Halstead and Biggar, were among the victims.

Mr. Owen, horror-stricken by this awful deed of treachery, which he and Wood had witnessed from the door of their hut, at once shook the dust of Umgungundhlovu off his feet and left for the Bay. The American missionaries who had been labouring in Dingaan's country also considered it prudent to retire south to the English settlement.

## "Weenen."

Fearing, perhaps, that the Dutch farmers were the white men whose coming had been foretold by Chaka, Dingaan had determined to crush them at one blow. As a fitting sequel to the work of destruction so fearfully begun, a large impi at once set out from Umgungundhlovu to fall upon the scattered parties of emigrants encamped along the Tugela and Bushman Rivers. Dingaan had ample means of knowing their whereabouts from his captains of kraals in that district. The people were anxiously awaiting Retief's return, but no danger was apprehended. Many of the men were absent buffalo-hunting. The encampments were at **Doornkop, Blauwkrans, Moord Spruit,** close to the present main road, **Rensburg's Spruit,** and other places along the **Bushman River**. There was no laager formed at any of the encampments. Each family, with its tents and wagons and cattle, formed a station by itself, often miles from its nearest neighbours, and with hills and valleys intervening. Except Doornkop, which lay furthest to the west, the encampments were attacked almost simultaneously in the darkness of the night, when man and beast lay hushed in sleep. Men, women, and children were ruthlessly stabbed ere they could see the glint of the death-dealing

spear or the hand that wielded it. The savages spared nothing alive except the cattle. Family after family was butchered without mercy all through that dreadful night. In the darkness and confusion a few escaped and hasted on to warn their neighbours.

The **Rensburg** and **Pretorius** families left their wagons and took refuge on a hill, now called **Rensburg's Kop,** which could be attacked only on two sides. There, for hours, fourteen determined men kept a Zulu regiment at bay. Their ammunition was nearly exhausted and hope had almost fled when a horseman was seen on the outskirts of the swarming savages. Johannes Rensburg held up his gun reversed. At once comprehending the signal, the horseman at the risk of his life rode to the wagon of Pretorius, about a mile distant. At the wagon he loaded himself up with powder and bullets and prepared for a dash back. Well was it for that gallant Dutchman that he sat his horse like a centaur, for his gun demanded all the resources of eye and hand. Dealing death right and left, he dashed through the mass of kafirs at the foot of the hill, and, thanks to his horse and his strong right arm, joined his friends unscathed with the welcome supply of ammunition. The Zulus were soon afterwards beaten off. **Mr. Marthinus Oosthuyse,** the hero of that adventurous ride, is still alive to tell the story.

As morning dawned, the farmers encamped by the Bushman River hurriedly constructed a laager with the wagons and defied the swarm of Zulus bent on their destruction. The women carried ammunition to the men, and even the children cried for pistols that they might shoot. Re-inforced by parties of four and five who rode in from Doornkop and other places, the farmers at last routed their assailants and put them to flight. With tears streaming down

their faces for their murdered kindred, and with revenge burning in their hearts, the boers quitted the laager and pursued the retreating foe. Hundreds of kafirs were either drowned or shot in attempting to cross the Bushman River, then swollen with rain and flowing furiously. The village of **Weenen** takes its name not alone from the *weeping* of the Dutch people for their dead, but from the wailing and lamentation of the kafirs as they were pursued by the avenging bullets of the boers in that terrible chase down the Bushman River valley. When the survivors of that awful night visited the separate encampments, the sights they witnessed were heartrending. Beneath a heap of mangled bodies two children were found alive, though pierced by numberless assegai stabs. Both survived, but one was a cripple for life. Within a week, over six hundred men, women, and children fell victims to the treachery of the Zulu King.

## A Gallant Deed.

Many of the boers were still on the other side of the Berg. When **Pieter Uys** heard of the disasters which had befallen his friends, he and his party joined the unfortunate people in Natal. With this accession to their numbers the boers raised a commando of 350 men, in April, 1838, to proceed against Dingaan. **Uys** and **Potgieter** were joint leaders of the force; Maritz remained with the emigrants. Uys had his son with him, a boy about 14 years of age. The commando was watched all the way by Zulu spies, and the Dutchmen saw nothing of the enemy until they were within a mile or two of Umgungundhlovu. There on each side of a basin between high hills and broken by *dongas* or gullies they found the Zulu army awaiting them. Uys and his men without hesitation rode to within twenty yards of

one division and opened a steady fire. In five minutes the kafirs were in full flight. The Dutchmen in pursuing them got separated into small parties, and several were killed by the enemy who had concealed themselves in the dongas. Uys was struck by an assegai in his thigh. He pulled it out and then fainted from loss of blood. Recovering consciousness, he was borne on his horse for some distance. Seeing danger imminent, he besought his son and the others to leave him and save themselves. After galloping about a hundred yards, young Uys looked back and saw his father lift his head while assegais gleamed thick around him. In an instant the boy was back at his side, and shot three Zulus before he too was overpowered and speared. Young **Dirk Uys** laid down his life for his father, and won the cross "For Valour" in that wild ravine.

Potgieter's detachment had retreated before the Zulus after firing a few shots. The rest of the commando succeeded in fighting their way back across the Buffalo with the loss of only one or two men.

## The Battle of the Tugela.

Shortly after the defeat of Uys and Potgieter by the Zulus, the Englishmen at the Bay sent a force north in the cause of the boers to attack Dingaan. The English settlers themselves were few in number, and the small army was composed mostly of **Natal natives,** 400 of whom were armed with guns. **Biggar** led the expedition. The American missionaries pointed out to the Englishmen the hazardous and hopeless nature of such an attack on Dingaan, but they remonstrated in vain. Early one morning Biggar's men crossed the Tugela near its mouth, and were unexpectedly attacked by seven Zulu regiments, comprising about 10,000 men. Dingaan's warriors were flushed with

the triumph of three victories over the boers, and fought in the full assurance of another. There was a desperate and sanguinary engagement ending in the complete defeat of the English force. Those who tried to escape across the river were forced by the Zulus over a cliff a hundred feet high with a deep pool at the bottom. Very few returned to tell the tale of defeat. **Biggar, Cane,** and **Stubbs** were all left dead by the Tugela, and only four Englishmen escaped. They were pursued nearly to the Bay, and owed their deliverance to the darkness of night and the shelter of the bush.

Dingaan was now master of the situation. He had crushed, as he imagined, both the Dutch and the English, and **a force was sent down to the Bay** to wipe out the settlement and all its inhabitants. The English residents were forewarned. They had a look-out on the hills, and when news reached them that the expected Zulu impi had encamped by the River Umgeni no time was lost in going on board the brig **Comet** anchored in the Bluff channel. The Zulus came and occupied the settlement for nine days. When they left nothing remained but the walls of some of the houses. Property of all kinds was utterly destroyed.

## Andries Pretorius.

The Dutch emigrants were greatly dispirited by Dingaan's repeated triumphs, and Potgieter with about half their number left for Overberg. Those who remained suffered much misery during the winter of 1838 from both famine and disease. Many of their cattle had been captured by the Zulus and there had been no time to till the land. The want of corn-food was severely felt by the women and children. Another attack on the emigrants was made by Dingaan in August of that year at **Vecht Laager** near

Estcourt, when, knowing their weakened state, he anticipated an easy victory. But the emigrants were this time prepared, and the Zulus were beaten off with great loss. Early in the year three influential boers had gone to the Cape Colony to appeal to their countrymen for assistance. In the month of November a tower of strength was added to the emigrants' cause in the person of **Andries Pretorius,** a farmer from Graaf Reinet and a man of imposing presence and of great shrewdness and ability. He brought some volunteers with him and was chosen Chief Commandant. With **Carl Landman** as second in command and a force of 460 resolute hearts, Pretorius started in December to take vengeance on Dingaan and to recover the property stolen during his attacks.

## The Laager on the Blood River.

In the new Commandant, wary as well as brave, the crafty Zulu at last met his match. Every precaution was taken on the march to avoid surprise. Scouts were sent out in advance; the wagons, fifty-seven in number, were nightly formed into a laager with all the cattle inside; and night patrols were appointed. Religious service was held morning and evening, and the Chief Commandant proposed that a vow should be made to the Lord,—that if He vouchsafed them the victory, a house should be raised to His great name and the day observed as a holy day by them and their posterity. The vow was solemnly confirmed by all the assembly. On the evening of Saturday, the 15th December, the camp was pitched by a stream running into the Buffalo, and thereafter suggestively named the **Blood River.** The scouts reported that the Zulu army was in sight. The laager was formed in the usual way and was protected on the west by a ravine and a hill since named

Vecht Kop and on the east by a deep reach of the river. On the other two sides there was open ground. At early dawn on **Sunday, the 16th December,** Dingaan's whole army fell on the laager by the Blood River. Four times the kafirs made a rush to storm the camp, and each time the deadly fire from the muskets and the discharges from the cannon placed at every entrance drove them back with fearful loss. When the fighting had continued for two hours, Pretorius ordered his men to leave the laager and charge the enemy in the open. The boers were a handful against a host, but with bravery equal to that of the Zulus, they had two advantages over their foes. They had horses and they had muskets; and they were fearless riders and unerring shots. The kafirs fled before them. Four hundred were shot in the ravine and the river was red with blood. On that day of slaughter over three thousand kafirs perished. The only casualties on the boer side were three men wounded by assegais in the pursuit. Pretorius was one of the three.

The vow made before the battle was religiously kept. **The Dutch Reformed Church in Maritzburg**—one of the first buildings in the town—was erected in fulfilment of the solemn pledge; and **Dingaan's Day**, the 16th of December, when Pretorius and Landman and 460 farmers avenged the blood of their countrymen and broke the power of the Zulu tyrant, is still observed by all Dutch people in South Africa as a holy anniversary.

## The Hill of Mimosas.

From the Blood River the boers moved further into Zululand. About a day's march from the Umfolosi the patrol saw dense smoke rising in the direction of **Umgungundhlovu.** When the commando arrived there on the 21st December, that dark place of the earth was found

completely deserted and the royal kraal burnt to the ground. The "humbled bloodhound," as Pretorius called the Zulu King, had retreated to the forest lower down the Umfolosi. On the mimosa-covered hill near the kraal, the farmers beheld terrible witnesses of the massacre of February. There lay the skeletons of their murdered friends, most of them easily known by the shreds of clothes attached to the bones. The sticks with which they had been beaten to death lay thick around them. **Retief** was recognised by his clothes and by the leather hunting-bag slung round his shoulders. In it was found clean and uninjured the document by which Dingaan ceded Natal to Retief and his people "for their everlasting property." Sadly and solemnly the bones of the murdered men were collected and buried in one large grave.

## An Ambuscade.

While the boers were encamped at Umgungundhlovu two of Dingaan's spies were captured. They said the Zulu army was completely scattered, and that countless cattle which they had been unable to drive away were in the ravines below. Looking from the heights into the wooded gorge of the Ipate, the boers indeed saw what they thought were cattle moving among the bushes. Two hundred and sixty mounted men at once started to secure the prize. When they reached the low ground the boers discovered that they had been outwitted. Dingaan's men had led them into an ambuscade as Dougal did the English troops into Rob Roy's country. The seeming cattle were kafirs crawling on all-fours with their shields of ox-hide on their backs. With assegais upraised, no longer on all-fours, they swarmed like ants round the Dutchmen. Thanks to their horses the boers fought their way through without the loss of a man.

But they were intercepted in another gorge, and in the bed of a craggy stream five of their number were killed. **Biggar,** one of the Englishmen at the Bay, had joined the commando with sixty or seventy coast natives of the **Amacele** tribe. His son was killed at Weenen, and he joined the boers to avenge his loss. Biggar was mounted, and could easily have escaped, but he would not desert the Amacele who had faithfully followed him. His magnanimity cost him his life. From him the range of the **Biggarsberg** takes its name. Constantly retiring and fighting, the boers gained their camp on the Umfolosi.

## Captain Jervis.

After this reverse Pretorius succeeded in capturing six or seven thousand head of cattle. The successful commando then returned with the spoil to the emigrants' headquarters on the Tugela. There unexpected news awaited Pretorius. A detachment of English soldiers had arrived on the 6th of December and occupied the Port. The small force consisted of 100 men of **the 72nd Highlanders and Royal Artillery** under the command of **Major Charters.** Mr. Shepstone, now Sir Theophilus Shepstone, whose name has since been familiar as household words, accompanied Major Charters. It was his first visit to the land with which his name was to be so intimately associated. **Mr. Shepstone** was then diplomatic agent at Fort Peddie. He there acquired the name of **Somtseu**—*a Nimrod, a mighty hunter*—the designation by which he has ever since been known to the natives of South Africa. The soldiers were sent up by Sir George Napier, the Governor of the Cape, to put a stop if possible to the war between the Zulus and the emigrant farmers. It was feared that if hostilities continued the consequences would be most disastrous for both

sides. As the Cape Government had not sanctioned the boers quitting their own country, **Sir George Napier** by proclamation still **claimed them as English subjects,** and declared their occupation of Natal unwarranted. Great indignation was aroused among the emigrants by his statement that the atrocities which had occurred had been "participated in, if not originated by, their acts." Major Charters communicated his instructions to the Volksraad, and then, accompanied by Mr. Shepstone, left overland for the Cape before the return of Pretorius and his commando. **Captain Jervis** was now in command, but he found the Dutchmen in no mood to submit to dictation of any kind. They were wroth at the harsh words in Sir George Napier's proclamation, and protested against the soldiers taking possession of the port. They demanded their ammunition which had been seized, and assured Captain Jervis that it would be used only in self-defence. That officer poured oil on the troubled waters. He adopted the course which made for the peace of the settlement and restored the ammunition. By reason of the tact and good feeling which he showed, friendly relations were soon established between the boers and the handful of soldiers at **Fort Victoria,** the fort or blockhouse built by Captain Jervis on a slight elevation behind the site of the present Custom House. The Dutch took possession of it on the departure of Captain Jervis and his men in 1839.

## Pietermaritzburg.

The year 1839 was a peaceful one for the emigrants. Many more of their countrymen joined them from Overberg. A permanent camp or village, to which the name of **Weenen** was given, was formed on the Bushman River near the scene of the massacre. A landdrost was appointed

for that settlement, and one also for **Durban,** where many of the boers were residing. There were encampments also at **Umlaas** and **Congella**—"Kangela" or *look-out.* The bulk of the people, however, in number about two thousand, had congregated at **Bushman's Rand,** now the city of Pietermaritzburg. The Volksraad, consisting of twenty-four members, met there every quarter in a building within the laager near where the Natal Bank now stands. In 1839 a town was laid out on the "rand" and named **Pietermaritzburg,** in honour of **Pieter Retief and Gert Maritz,** who had both died in the preceding year. Water was led down the streets; the erven were surrounded by turf walls and planted with fruit trees and vegetables; houses gradually began to fill up the long streets; and even in 1839 Pretorius could say it was "a large, pleasant, and well-watered town." The memorial church was one of the first buildings erected. It adjoined the Market Square, close to the site of the present Dutch Church. The **Rev. Daniel Lindley,** venerated by the boers and early colonists for his saintly life and zealous labours, officiated in this church until 1847, when he returned to his work among the natives in connection with the American Mission.

Mr. Archbell, the Wesleyan missionary, was not so fortunate in his forecast of the future of Pietermaritzburg as he was in that of Durban. The lack of fuel, he said, was the great drawback to its ever becoming a centre of population or of trade, and the want of trees "actually stamped deformity on its appearance." Mr. Archbell did not recognise the picturesque and admirably-selected site of the capital, nor did he foresee the transformation which would be effected on the face of bare and desolate Bushman's Rand by the gardening and tree-planting of half-a-century.

## The Flag of the Dutch Republic.

The object for which the troops had been sent to Natal seemed accomplished at the end of 1839. There had been peace for a whole year between the boers and Dingaan. The occupation of Durban had not succeeded in checking the emigration from the Cape which still went on, nor did it prevent the Dutch from obtaining firearms and ammunition. As the English Government was still resolved not to colonise Natal, and as the 72nd was under orders for home, Captain Jervis and his force were withdrawn by order of Sir George Napier on the 24th December, 1839. The boers naturally regarded the departure of the soldiers as the abandonment of the country by the English Government. It was theirs, then, by the right of conquest and possession; and they had bought it with the blood of their bravest and dearest. Of the real owners of the land, thousands of whom were then living around them, they knew, or cared to know, nothing. As the **Vectis** sailed out of the harbour with the troops, the farmers fired a salute and hoisted on the flag-staff the colours of the **Republic of Natalia**.

For the second time **the Dutch took formal possession of Natal.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Dutch farmers first emigrated from Cape Colony | 1834 |
| Boers, under Retief, entered Natal ... | 1837 |
| Murder of Retief and his followers ... | 1838 |
| Massacre of Dutch by Dingaan ... ... | 1838 |
| Defeat of Uys ... ... ... ... | 1838 |
| Battle of the Tugela ... ... ... | 1838 |
| Dingaan's Day ... ... | 16th December, 1838 |
| First occupation of Natal by English troops | 1838-1839 |
| Pietermaritzburg founded ... ... ... | 1839 |
| Republic of Natalia proclaimed | 24th December, 1839 |

## CHAPTER VII.

### *THE REPUBLIC OF NATALIA.*

### A Royal Refugee.

Dingaan was not entirely crushed by his defeat at the Blood River. In the winter of 1839 he sent friendly messages to the boers along with three hundred horses he had captured from them at various times. The farmers had learned caution in their dealings with the crafty Zulu, for they knew he could smile while cherishing murderous designs in his heart. Some of his messengers admitted that they were sent as spies to ascertain whether the farmers were in laager or in separate unprotected companies. Dingaan was only waiting another opportunity of attacking his dreaded foes when half of his power suddenly fell away from him and the Dutchmen secured an unlooked-for ally. The Zulu King's house had long been divided against itself. Many of his people were soldiers only on compulsion. They were tired of the ceaseless fighting and bloodshed, and of the cruelty and tyranny of a chief into whose presence even his bravest generals must approach "in the cringing attitude of a dog." Such a malcontent was **Umpande** or **Panda,** the brother of the king, and a man indolent in his habits, and of a much more peaceful disposition than either Chaka or Dingaan. He fell under suspicion and, to avoid the consequences, fled into Natal. He was joined in his flight by about half the Zulu people. From the south of the Tongaat River where he halted with all his followers, he sent messages to the Dutch leaders asking their protection.

After an interview between Panda and a deputation from the boers, who were much impressed by his majestic bearing, it was agreed that he should assist the farmers in the overthrow of Dingaan and be recognised as "**Prince of the Emigrant Zulus.**"

## Panda, King of the Zulus.

In January, 1840, after the port was evacuated by the English soldiers, two hostile forces simultaneously took the field against Dingaan. A body of 350 mounted men under **Pretorius** marched into Zululand by way of the Biggarsberg and the Buffalo River; Panda's force, led by **Nongalaza,** crossed the Tugela about 20 miles below Krans Kop. Panda himself and three of his captains accompanied the boer army as sureties of good faith. Nongalaza was the first to encounter Dingaan. After a desperate fight, in which two of the king's regiments were destroyed to a man and a third deserted to the enemy, Dingaan with his two remaining regiments fled to the Pongola River closely pursued by both the boer and native forces. Thus hemmed in, **Dingaan** sought refuge in the country of the **Amaswazi,** his hereditary foes. He was captured by their king Sobuza and tortured to death.

The arch enemy of the boers was thus crushed for ever, and all Zululand lay at their feet. Forty thousand head of cattle were bestowed by Panda on the boers as an indemnity for past losses. On the 14th of February, 1840, at the camp on the **Black Umfolosi, Andries Pretorius** in the name of the "Volksraad of the South African Society" **claimed all the land from the Umzimvubu to the Black Umfolosi and from the Drakensberg to the sea.** This modern Kingmaker also formally installed **Panda,** the vassal and "great ally" of the farmers, as

**King of the Zulus.** The ceremony over, a salute of 21 guns was fired in honour of the Volksraad, while all the men as with one voice cried out "Thanks to the Great God who by His grace has given us the victory!"

## Returning Home.

The breaking up of the Zulu despotism which for thirty years had terrorised South Eastern Africa had the effect of considerably increasing the native population of Natal. Of the **94 tribes** which inhabited the land when Chaka began his reign of terror, **39** as tribes had ceased to exist, dispersed and destroyed by hunger and the assegai. One of these was the Abakwamacibise, whose home was the site of Maritzburg. Scattered members of these lost tribes collected and formed new ones. There were **five** of such **mixed communities** in Natal when Retief came down the Berg. There were also at that time **thirty-four aboriginal tribes** living in the country. Some of them were in the Tugela valley under captains of kraals; others were under their hereditary chiefs. The protection afforded by the presence of both English and Dutch settlers gave greater confidence to the many natives who had hitherto lurked in forest and ravine. Many of the tribes, though attenuated in numbers by hunger and misery, had never quitted the land. The **Amahlubi,** the first which suffered from Chaka's warlike policy, persisted in remaining near the sources of the Umzinyati. The **Amatuli** never left the Bluff and adjoining lands until 1850, when they were removed to a location on the Umkomaas to make room for white settlers at Durban. The **Amafunze,** driven from the open country of Upper Umvoti by Chaka, after many wanderings settled at the head of the Umlaas. The **Amampumuza,** now in the Zwartkop location under **Teteleku,** had their ancient home on the Inadi River where

they were attacked and dispersed by Chaka. They had re-assembled at the Zwartkop before the Dutchmen came. It is to be remembered that the so-called Zulus were a composite people made up from nearly every tribe in South Eastern Africa. The Natal natives seized every opportunity of escape from Zululand, and by twos and threes they deserted from Dingaan despite the measures he took for checking the migration. The discontented "Zulus" who fled in thousands with Panda into Natal were not Zulus at all but exiles who eagerly availed themselves of the chance of returning to their own land and of rejoining their own people. Whole tribes such as the **Amaqwabe** re-assembled during that period of confusion, the natives coming back not only from Zululand but also from the Amapondo country where they had taken refuge from Zulu tyranny. It is estimated that over 100,000 natives returned to their own land when the overthrow of Dingaan gave them their release.

## A War of Words.

Freed from the presence of the English *rooibaatjes*, or redcoats, and secure in the alliance of the new Zulu King, the Dutch farmers began to enjoy the land for which they had suffered so sorely and struggled so valiantly. Large tracts of land were allotted to each family, houses were built on the farms, and cultivation of the land was begun in earnest. The Volksraad was anxious that the **"Republic of Natalia"** should be recognised by the English Government as a free and independent state, and many communications on the subject passed between the "Council of the People" and Sir George Napier, the Governor of the Cape. The latter, acting on instructions from England, refused to recognise the emigrants as an independent people and

claimed them as English subjects ; the former as strenuously declared that they had ceased to owe allegiance to the Queen and had legally acquired Natal as their own possession. The war of words was carried on at intervals for two years, but no active steps were taken by England to assume authority in Natal.

## The Raid on the Amabaca.

Some proceedings of the Dutch farmers, however, caused alarm on the Cape frontier and brought matters to a crisis. A commando was sent out against the **Amabaca** tribe, whose chief was **'Ncapai**. This was a tribe which originally dwelt on the Town Lands of Maritzburg, but was driven south in Chaka's wars to near the upper waters of the Umzimvubu. 'Ncapai was nominally tributary to Faku, the Amapondo Chief. His kraals were near the cave-haunts of the Bushmen, and the farmers suspected him of complicity with those pygmy marauders in the theft of some thousands of cattle. The Dutchmen attacked 'Ncapai's kraals, shot 150 of his people, and captured 3,000 head of cattle. Some women and children were also taken. Faku, taking alarm at this raid on a neighbouring chief, applied to the Cape Government for protection. His appeal was answered by the despatch of a detachment of troops under **Captain Smith,** a Waterloo officer, to the **River Umgazi**, a stream south of the Umzimvubu.

## The Volksraad and the Natives.

Meanwhile the existence of natives around them in increasingly large numbers began to force itself on the notice of the Dutch farmers. Not knowing, and without the means of knowing, the history of these natives, the boers imagined them, except those they had found at the

port on their arrival, to be interlopers from Zululand, with no right or claim to the country. They were squatting on the farms of the colonists, and they might in time become dangerous. The **Volksraad,** therefore, in August, 1841, resolved that **all the Kafirs should be removed from Natal** and located in the tract of coast-land between the Umtamvuna and the Umzimvubu. The natives were to be moved quietly, if possible; if not, then by force of arms. As the proposed location was also claimed by **Faku,** the Amapondo Chief, the English Government foresaw warfare and bloodshed should the scheme be attempted. Ever regardful of the interests of the native races, it also perceived the injustice of its "misguided and erring subjects" proposing to banish a people whose homes had been in the land long before the advent of the Dutch themselves. **Sir George Napier,** by a proclamation of the 2nd December, 1841, announced the intention of Her Majesty's Government to resume military occupation of Natal. **Captain Smith** was directed in March, 1842, to proceed **from the Umgazi to Durban** with a detachment of 237 men of **the 27th Regiment and Royal Artillery.** The British lion woke up at last.

## Captain Smith's March.

In February, 1842, the Volksraad made **a last protest** against the English "taking possession of any part" of Natal. The protest was contained in a lengthy letter addressed to Sir George Napier, from Pietermaritzburg, and signed by **Prinslo,** the President, and **Burger,** the Secretary of the Volksraad. The occupation of Natal had meanwhile been resolved upon.

Captain Smith's march up the coast was long and fatiguing. It was the rainy season, and the numberless

swollen rivers caused much delay. The south coast route is sufficiently toilsome at the present day, but the "roads before they were made" must have aggravated considerably the difficulties of the constant declivities and ascents. In many places Captain Smith had to cut a way for the baggage wagons through the almost tropical vegetation of the river valleys. The soldiers saw hippopotami in plenty, and often came across the spoor of lions and elephants in the forest glades. The hot sun and the burning sand proved very trying to the men during this six weeks' march. **Mr. Archbell,** of the Wesleyan Society, who had paid a flying visit to Natal in the previous year, accompanied the troops. He was sent to found a mission in connection with his society. After the force crossed the Umkomaas, every precaution was taken to prevent surprise on the march. Between that river and the Umbilo, Captain Smith and his men were met by four Englishmen who had ridden out to welcome them. At Sea View, near Umbilo, the troops halted, and the English residents there expressed their surprise at the smallness of the force sent to overawe fifteen hundred boers, fully armed. "Some one had blundered," but Captain Smith's duty was clear. Shortly after leaving **Umbilo,** two mounted Dutchmen met the troops and protested in the name of their countrymen against Captain Smith's advance. That officer replied that he could not admit the right of anyone to protest against the march of the Queen's troops through her own territory. No further opposition was made and Captain Smith took up his quarters on **the flat outside Durban,** and near the road to Umgeni. The present camp is on the same site. The colours of the "Republic of Natalia," which floated from the block-house at the Point, were hauled down and the ensign hoisted in their stead. The Englishmen in Durban at once ranged themselves on the side of their flag.

## The Mangrove Trees.

After the arrival of the English soldiers on the 4th May, armed Dutchmen began to congregate at their village of **Congella,** distant about three miles from Captain Smith's camp. **Andries Pretorius,** the Commandant, was among the first to arrive. Two messages were sent to the English commander requesting him to leave Natal. Of these Captain Smith took no notice. On the 11th May the two leaders had an interview, and the Dutchmen promised to withdraw to their farms. The promise was not kept, mounted and armed boers ostentatiously showing themselves day after day near the English camp. On the 23rd May, Captain Smith received a peremptory letter from Pretorius, enjoining him to break up his camp without delay and quit the Dutch territory. The letter was followed by the farmers seizing a number of cattle belonging to the troops. The English commander had orders to avoid hostilities with the boers if possible, but their irritating conduct exhausted his forbearance and he determined to dislodge them from Congella. His plan was to surprise them by a night attack when, with women and children to hamper their movements, they would be willing, he thought, to accept any terms he might dictate.

On the night of the 23rd May, **Captain Smith** put his scheme into execution. He left the camp at 11 o'clock with 138 men and two field-pieces. To avoid marching through thick bush, the men were led from the camp down through what is now Aliwal Street to the beach of the Bay. The tide was out and it was bright moonlight. A howitzer was fitted into a boat, which under the charge of a sergeant of artillery, was to drop down the channel to within 500 yards of Congella. The troops were to form under the cover of its fire and that of the two six-pounders taken with

them. With the Bay on the left and a dense thicket of mangroves on the right, the little force made its way along the sands to a point near the Congella camp where the line of mangroves abruptly ended in an open space. It is certain that the English troops had been watched all the way, and that Pretorius knew of the intended attack a few minutes after they had left the camp. Just as Captain Smith's men reached the end of **the mangrove trees** the stillness of the night was broken by the rattle of musketry and a deadly fire was poured into their ranks. Every shot had its effect. Twenty-five Dutchmen, hidden by the trees, lay on the ground levelling their long guns against the trunks and shooting down their antagonists as they came out into bold relief against the moonlit sands. The soldiers returned the fire, but mistaking mangroves for men they aimed too high and did no execution. Much confusion was caused by the oxen that drew the gun-carriages being maddened by wounds. The boat with the howitzer could not get near enough to be of any service. Captain Smith, seeing his men fall round him like withered leaves, thought it expedient to retreat. The tide was rising, and the soldiers had to splash their way back through mud and sand. Many got into deep water and were drowned. The two six-pounders with their ammunition were left unspiked to the boers. The survivors reached the camp at two o'clock on the morning of the 24th. Out of the 138 men who had left three hours before only 87 returned from that fatal midnight march. The missing men were accounted for next day when the dead and wounded were sent to the English camp by Pretorius. The farmers had treated the wounded men with the greatest humanity, and in some cases had rescued them from being drowned by the rising tide.

## Dick King's Ride.

Captain Smith's position was now one of great danger. The farmers demanded his surrender, and he asked for a truce of twenty-four hours to bury the dead. The request was readily granted. Captain Smith then asked for an armistice of seven days to enable him to consider his position. To this his opponents also agreed. The English force was reduced by nearly one-half, and it was evident that to obtain relief the Cape Government must at once be apprised of the perilous situation. Captain Smith took counsel with **Mr. George Cato** about sending a messenger with despatches to Grahamstown. Mr. Cato offered to go himself, but the commandant demurred to the absence of so valuable an ally. Another volunteer was soon found in **Mr. Richard King,** ever gratefully remembered as Dick King, one of the early settlers, then farming at Isipingo. In the dusk of the evening following the disaster at Congella, two boats, each towing a horse, were rowed across the Bluff Channel, Richard King and George Cato in one and Christopher Cato in the other. Landed on the Bluff beach, **Dick King**, like "Sir William of Deloraine, good at need," and mounted on the "wightest steed" the garrison could bestow, started under cover of night on his six hundred miles' ride to Grahamstown. By keeping along the base of the Bluff and the coast hills as far as Umlaas he avoided the Dutch scouts who were posted round Congella on the opposite side of the Bay. Before daybreak he had crossed the Umkomaas and was safe from pursuit. His track then lay through a savage country. Although King knew the native language and all the tracks and bye-paths on his route, no one but that doughty Englishman himself can ever know the fatigues and perils of his adventurous ride. Bridges and punts were unknown in those days, and

he had to swim the rivers where ford there was none. Once, near the Umzimvubu, he was in danger of his life from a party of the **Amabaca**. These natives had not forgotten the raid on 'Ncapai, and they mistook the travel-stained horseman for a Dutch farmer. Their attitude changed when they learned his errand. At the Wesleyan mission stations in Kaffraria he received every attention. King spared neither himself nor his horses. Ten days after leaving the Bluff he rode into Grahamstown more dead than alive and delivered his despatches to the Resident Agent, **Mr. Shepstone**. He had accomplished a feat scarcely ever equalled for pluck and endurance; and the "hurrying hoofs" of Dick King's steed

> "Now soft on the sand, now loud on the ledge,"

will be heard

> "Borne on the night-wind of the Past,
> Through all our history, to the last."

## In the Stocks.

On the night of the 25th May, while the messenger of deliverance was speeding down the coast road, a hundred boers left Congella and made their way to the Point along the base of the Berea and round by the sea-shore. They concealed themselves in the bush within two hundred yards of the blockhouse until daybreak. The population of the Point consisted of a small number of civilians and a sergeant and guard of 25 men in charge of the fort and of the stores and ammunition landed from the **Pilot** and the **Mazeppa,** then lying in the Bluff Channel. At the first blush of dawn the boers shot down the sentry. When the sergeant and the other soldiers showed themselves they were commanded to lay down their arms. Seeing the

futility of resistance, both soldiers and civilians surrendered themselves prisoners. The Mazeppa and the Pilot were ransacked. The provisions for the troops fell into the hands of the boers, as well as an 18-pounder, one of the two landed from the Pilot. The other was in the English camp. The soldiers and ten civilians—Cato, Armstrong, Beningfield, Douglas, Hogg, Ogle, Parkins, Toohey, McCabe, and Schwikkard—were taken to Congella and kept there for a week in the stocks. They were then conveyed by wagon to Pietermaritzburg. The unfortunate ten, being considered traitors to the Republic to which they had vowed allegiance before the advent of the troops, received much rougher treatment than the redcoats, who were quartered in a house at the top of Church Street and allowed their freedom on parole. **The ten civilians** were imprisoned in the jail where the Police Station now stands, and were chained two and two by the leg during the day and put in the stocks at night. **Mr. Wolhuter,** who resided then where he does now in Longmarket Street, exercised supervision over the prisoners of war by request of Commandant Pretorius, and as their honorary warder had to see that they were properly secured every night. There they remained until Dick King's ride brought relief and victory to the English.

## Besieged by the Boers.

Captain Smith determined not to surrender, and during the seven days' armistice he strengthened his camp by arranging his wagons in laager fashion and throwing up loop-holed earthworks. The boers took up a position near the foot of the Berea, where they placed the 18-pounder taken at the Point and the two 6-pounders left on the Bay beach. Just before sunrise on the 31st May they began the

siege by sending a six-pound shot into the camp. It passed through the officers' mess tent, and was the signal for manning the trenches. All that day the Dutch fire was constant and well-directed. When the attack had gone on till noon next day, a flag of truce was sent to Captain Smith offering to convey the women and children on board the **Mazeppa.** The offer was gladly accepted. The siege was then resumed and kept up with more or less persistency day after day. The Dutch had no balls for the 18-pounder. When its brother thunderer in the English camp was fired, the besiegers marked where the ball lodged, picked it up, and fired it back whence it came. This was done many times. By throwing up works near the camp the boers managed to keep up a galling fire on the batteries where the 18-pounder and the howitzer were placed. In a sortie made on the night of the 8th June some of these works were destroyed without loss of life. Another on the 18th resulted in a skirmish, when both sides had men killed and wounded. By this time Captain Smith's provisions were nearly exhausted. The men had been living for some time on half allowance of rice and biscuit-dust. On the 22nd of June they had dried horse-flesh and ground forage served out to them, all that was left to sustain life. The water from a well sunk in the camp was bad, and the wounded, twenty-six in number, suffered much from want of medical necessaries. These hardships were endured without a murmur, and even with the greatest cheerfulness. Nearly a month had passed since Dick King had started on his perilous journey. The relief of the camp depended on his success. Rockets sent up from the outer anchorage on the night of the 24th, and again, in greater number, on the night of the 25th, announced to the besieged that the messenger had done his work, and that **reinforcements were at hand.**

## The Mazeppa.

While the 27th were cooped up in their sandy prison on the vlei, another gallant attempt was made on their behalf. The schooner Mazeppa lying in the Bay had, besides her crew of nine, twenty-eight people on board who had gone thither for safety. Among them were Mr. Archbell and his family, Mrs. Cato and Mrs. Beningfield, whose husbands were prisoners of war in Pietermaritzburg, and women and children from the camp. The schooner, in charge of **Mr. Joseph Cato,** only waited a chance of escaping in quest of aid to the beleaguered garrison. It was a risky thing to attempt, for the Point and the Bluff were in possession of the Dutch and there was a strong guard at the block-house. Once outside, the Mazeppa would be safe. On the afternoon of the 10th June a south-westerly breeze favoured Mr. Cato's design, and before the surprised Dutchmen could muster to oppose his movements the Mazeppa had spread her sails to cross the bar. Unfortunately the breeze lightened off the sand-spit at the Point, where within a few minutes 80 boers were assembled with their muskets and a four-pounder. The tide was running in strong, the wind was failing, and the Mazeppa was not more than thirty yards from the guns of the Dutchmen. Her sails and rigging suffered severely but she ran the gauntlet without loss of life. The breeze freshened and carried the little schooner out of range of the bullets. She hove-to outside the bar and repaired damages. Mr. Cato then steered for Delagoa Bay in the hope of falling in with one of Her Majesty's cruisers. The gallant little schooner proceeded as far as Cape Corrientes without seeing a war-ship. She left Delagoa Bay on the 18th June after getting a supply of water and provisions and shaped her course to Port Elizabeth. Her voyage, however, came to an end at Natal, for on the after-

noon of the 27th June she found the frigate **Southampton** at anchor off the Bluff. Captain Smith was relieved.

## The Conch and the Southampton.

After King rode into Grahamstown with his despatches, no time was lost in sending reinforcements to Natal. By order of Colonel Hare, the Commandant of the Frontier, the grenadier company of **the 27th Regiment,** then stationed at Grahamstown, was embarked at Port Elizabeth in the schooner **Conch.** The master of the Conch, **Mr. William Bell,** had traded to Natal and was acquainted with the entrance to the Bay. He was afterwards and for many years Port Captain at Durban. When the news reached Capetown Sir George Napier at once despatched the Admiral's flag-ship, the **Southampton,** with **the 25th Regiment** under **Colonel Cloete,** Major D'Urban being second in command. The Conch made the Bluff on the 24th June, and as soon as she anchored the firing at the besieged camp could be distinctly heard. The Republican port-captain, Mr. Morewood, and the military secretary came out to the Conch. Their faces lengthened when they saw the grenadiers "thick as bees" in the hatchways. A letter was sent from Captain Durnford commanding the troops to Commandant Pretorius, asking him to allow a surgeon from the Conch to go to help the doctor in the camp. A distinct "no" was the reply. Rockets sent up by the schooner at night were answered by rockets from the camp. At dusk next night, the 25th, the Southampton was sighted, and at midnight she anchored, guided to the mooring-ground by rockets from the Conch which she answered with her guns. These were cheering sights and sounds for the worn-out men in the camp. They were an earnest of help at hand.

## Over the Bar.

On Sunday, the 26th June, the **Conch** and the **Southampton** were anchored as near to the bar as was thought safe. The frigate's boats, filled with soldiers, were to be towed in by the schooner, also with troops on board, piloted by Captain Bell and protected by the guns of the Southampton. The boers were in force on both sides of the entrance with two 4-pounders pointed seaward. At three o'clock with a full tide and an easterly breeze the Conch with her train of boats sailed buoyantly over the bar and ran into the cross fire of the boers. The low bulwarks of the schooner were heightened by planks, and by blankets hung on a line. The soldiers answered the fire bravely, and the war-ship sent shot and shell from her great guns right and left into the bush where the Dutch marksmen were concealed. The "adamantine lips" of the Southampton's guns, more than anything else, decided the movements of the Dutchmen. When the soldiers landed at the Point under Major D'Urban the surrounding bush was scoured in vain for the enemy. They were already in the saddle and far on their way to Congella. The first proceeding of the victors was to haul down the flag of the Republic from the block-house and run up **the Ensign, never again to be lowered.** The whole work of crossing the bar and taking possession of the Point was done in about twenty minutes. Two men were killed and six wounded during the passage. Captain Smith's camp was soon discovered and his sufferings were at an end. That same night the master of the Pilot, who had been a prisoner at Congella with four others, escaped to the Point in the confusion caused by Colonel Cloete's landing, and reported that Congella was being deserted by the Dutch farmers. They retired to **Cowie's Hill** near Pinetown on the road to Pietermaritzburg.

## Colonel Cloete.

There was a difference of opinion between Colonel Cloete and Captain Smith about the future treatment of the Dutch farmers. Captain Smith was eager to avenge his defeats and losses. The commanding officer thought that a march inland to attack the boers in a country so favourable to surprises as Natal would probably result only in further loss. **Pietermaritzburg,** too, the head-quarters of the farmers, was known to be strongly defended. Colonel Cloete's more peaceful counsels prevailed. He offered a free pardon to all who "should return to their allegiance," with the exception of five men who had taken the lead in the rebellion against the Queen's authority. They were **Andries Pretorius, Joachim Prinslo, Jacobus Burger, Michiel Van Breda,** and **Servaas Van Breda.** At a stormy meeting of the Volksraad held in the church at Pietermaritzburg, on the 5th July, the farmers resolved to submit. Many of them had deluded themselves into the belief that the King of Holland was ready to help them against England. They were ignorant of the changes which had taken place in Europe since the settlement of the Cape and supposed Holland to be still one of the Great Powers.

The submission of the farmers was followed by a treaty ratified on the 15th July, 1842, in which they promised,

1st, to submit to the Queen's authority;

2nd, to release all prisoners;

3rd. to give up the cannon in their possession; and

4th, to restore all public and private property.

Colonel Cloete on his part agreed to grant a pardon to all concerned except the five leaders, to allow the farmers to return unmolested to their homesteads with their guns and horses, and to protect them from attacks of the Zulus and other native tribes. Until the pleasure of the English

Governor was known, the farmers were not to be interfered with in regard to the land they had taken possession of, and they were to be ruled as before by their Volksraad. The natives were to remain on the lands they occupied when the troops came. **"Port Natal,"** however, extending from the Umgeni to the Umlaas and from the ridge of the Berea to the ocean, was to be a distinctly English territory ruled over by Captain Smith. The town springing up by the Bay was from that time more commonly known as **Durban,** the name given to the infant settlement in 1835.

As **Commandant Pretorius** had done his best to arrange matters peacefully, and had been uniformly humane to all prisoners, he was included in the general pardon. A reward of £1,000 offered for the arrest of the other four was never claimed. Servaas Van Breda was in after years a member of the Legislative Council of Natal. As a consequence of the treaty, the loyalists in the Pietermaritzburg jail were set free and sent to Durban. Colonel Cloete's settlement of the disturbances did not meet with general approval in Natal. Feeling ran high, and it was thought he had conceded too much to the men who had caused so much loss of life and property. The leniency shown by the commandant was approved by the English Government, which believed that the moderate measures adopted would change bitter opponents into faithful subjects.

Colonel Cloete with some of the reinforcements left Natal on the 21st July, 1842, and Major D'Urban, with a second detachment, on the 25th. Captain Smith, promoted to the brevet-rank of Major, was left in command with 350 men.

## The Commissioner.

In 1843 Sir George Napier sent to Natal a special Commissioner to report on all claims to land made by the Dutch

farmers, and to communicate to them the decision of the English Government about the future government of the country. The Commissioner was **Mr. Henry Cloete,** brother of Colonel Cloete, and an advocate of the Supreme Court in Capetown. When he arrived in Pietermaritzburg he found the spirit of resistance to English authority still alive in many of the boers. Some of them clung to the vain hope of help from Holland. The more ignorant and discontented among them were conspiring with their lawless and turbulent countrymen who had settled along the **Vaal,** the **Vet,** and the **Modder Rivers.** They had designs of attacking Panda and then regaining Natal by force of arms. Six or seven hundred of these disaffected boers under a leader named **Mocke** were in Pietermaritzburg when Mr. Cloete arrived. A number of them came secretly armed to the meeting of the Volksraad at which the proposals of the English Government were considered. The friends of peace and order, chief among whom were **Pretorius, Stephanus Maritz, Poortman, Zietsman,** and **Boshoff,** gained the day. The Volksraad agreed to accept the conditions then laid down as necessary to a Dutch occupation of Natal under English rule. These were:

1. "There shall not in the eye of the law be any distinction of persons or disqualification, founded on mere distinction of colour, origin, language, or creed; but that the protection of the law, in letter and in substance, shall be extended impartially to all alike.
2. That no aggression shall be sanctioned upon the natives residing beyond the limits of the colony, under any plea whatever, by any private person or any body of men, unless acting under the immediate authority and orders of the Government.
3. That slavery in any shape or under any modification is absolutely unlawful, as in every other portion of Her Majesty's dominions."

Mr. Cloete announced that England had no intention of extending her authority beyond the Drakensberg. Thereupon Mocke and his followers withdrew over the mountains, bitterly disappointed at the failure of their schemes. In order to guide the Crown in making grants of land, Mr. Cloete received from the farmers returns of the land which they had occupied for a period of twelve months before his arrival. He visited **King Panda** in Zululand and informed that potentate of the turn affairs had taken in Natal. A treaty of "peace and friendship" was signed by Mr. Cloete and Panda on the 5th October. The boundary of Natal was defined to be the Tugela from its mouth to its junction with the Umzinyati and thence to the sources of that river. All captains of kraals on the right bank of the Tugela were to be at once removed across to the other side. On the same day Panda formally ceded to Her Majesty "for ever" all right and title to **St. Lucia Bay.** The treaty was signed by the Commissioner of Natal and the King of the Zulus "with the view of securing both countries from being unlawfully visited by adventurers of any foreign countries."

The Commissioner did not leave Natal till 1844, but the **Republic of Natalia** was formally and finally abolished on **the 10th of May, 1843.** On that day **Natal became a British Colony** "for the peace, protection, and salutary control of all classes of men settled at and surrounding that important portion of South Africa."

| | |
|---|---|
| Death of Dingaan: Panda declared King of the Zulus ... ... ... ... | 1840 |
| Second occupation of Natal by English troops | 1842 |
| Battle of Congella ... ... ... | 1842 |
| Captain Smith besieged by the boers ... | 1842 |
| Natal proclaimed an English colony | 10th May, 1843 |

## CHAPTER VIII.

### *NATAL A PROVINCE OF THE CAPE.*

### Within Fourteen Days.

More than two years had elapsed since Natal was declared to be an English colony, the year 1845 had nearly passed away, and **Major Smith** still held sway in his miniature kingdom round the Bay, while the **Volksraad** managed affairs beyond the Berea. The Dutch settlers became very impatient at the long delay of the English authorities in settling their claims to land and in arranging for the permanent government of the country. The farmers in remote homesteads were alarmed at the great and increasing number of natives now everywhere manifest. They dreaded that the scenes they had witnessed on the Cape frontier might be re-enacted in Natal. The boers, of course, regarded the natives as bloodthirsty Zulus, and not as sons of the soil, whose traditions were all of peace and not of war. The uneasiness became so great that the Volksraad resolved to banish all the kafirs who had come into Natal after the arrival of Major Smith and his men. They were to return whence they came within 14 days of receiving the intimation, and Major Smith was requested to help the settlers in carrying out this sweeping measure of removal. That officer refused to aid them in any such scheme, one which, he said, was certain to cause commotion and bloodshed should it be attempted. He advised them to wait patiently until the plans of the English Government were made known.

## The First English Governor.

At last, in December, 1845, **Natal was annexed to the Cape,** and Sir Peregrine Maitland, Sir George Napier's successor, appointed **Mr. Martin West,** Resident Magistrate at Grahamstown, to be **the first Lieutenant-Governor of Natal.** He was assisted in the government by an Executive Council of five. There was no Legislative Council, all laws for Natal being made by the Cape Government. The Lieutenant-Governor could communicate with the Queen's Ministers only through the Governor of the Cape. Natal was thus only a province of the older colony, and it continued to be so till 1856.

The Government officers, who in the infancy of the colony were associated with Mr. West as his Executive Council, were **Colonel Boys,** the Commandant; **Mr. Donald Moodie,** Colonial Secretary; **Dr. William Stanger,** Surveyor-General; **Mr. John Bird,** who acted for Dr. Stanger while on leave; **Mr. William Field,** Collector of Customs; and **Mr. Walter Harding,** Crown Prosecutor. To **Mr. Theophilus Shepstone** was given the important office of "Diplomatic Agent to the Native Tribes" or Secretary for Native Affairs, a post for which his large experience among the natives of Cape Colony and his intimate knowledge of their language eminently fitted him. **Mr. Henry Cloete,** the Commissioner of 1843, was appointed Recorder or Judge. He was afterwards a Puisne Judge in the Cape Colony. Dr. Stanger did not long hold the office of Surveyor-General. He died in Natal after returning from leave of absence and was succeeded by **Dr. Sutherland,** in 1857.

The garrison of Natal, under Major Smith, was relieved by the **45th Regiment,** with Colonel Boys in command. Two companies of the regiment had been in Natal since

1843. **Fort Napier,** the headquarters of the troops in Natal, was built in 1845. Much enlarged since that time it is now a military village, crowning the once desolate Bushman's Rand and commanding the city.

In 1848 it became evident that the plan of making laws in Capetown for Natal would not be satisfactory. The bounds of freedom were then slightly widened. The Lieutenant-Governor, with the Colonial Secretary, the Surveyor-General, and the Crown Prosecutor, were constituted **a Legislative Council.**

## Another Exodus.

Lieutenant-Governor West proceeded without delay to settle the land grants according to his instructions. The demands of the leading boers were so exorbitant that they could not be entertained. Claimants of land were divided into two classes. In the first class were placed those who were occupying farms when Mr. Cloete registered their claims. The second class comprised those who had been in occupation of the land within twelve months preceding the registration, but who from some cause had been obliged to quit it. **Farms of 6,000 acres** were given to the first class and **2,000 acres** to the second, both at a nominal rent or price. Building sites in the towns of Pietermaritzburg, Durban, and Weenen were also granted to the farmers who had claimed them. This liberal settlement by no means satisfied the "earth-hunger" of the boers. They had not received as much as they asked, and they considered that the English Government had broken faith with them. Accordingly another exodus of the farmers began, and continued during 1846 and 1847. Some went over the Berg to their friends in the Sovereignty; a few went no further than the Klip River and Biggarsberg districts. Besides what they

deemed the unjust settlement of the land claims, two other grievances excited them to wrath and discontent. Their Volksraad was abolished. They had no voice now in the government of the land they had fought for; the freedom they had pursued after had vanished like a dream. And the kafirs, whom they both feared and disliked, were around them in countless numbers, and were even located on their farms. The dreadful scenes of the Weenen massacre were still before their eyes.

## Native Locations.

The Lieutenant-Governor had also the land question to arrange in regard to another class of settlers, much more numerous and possessed of stronger rights to the soil than either the English or the Dutch. Their fathers had lived on the Umvoti, or the Tugela, or the Umtwalumi, for untold "moons" and long before the white man had set foot in South Africa. Justice, therefore, required that their dwelling-places should be firmly secured to them. The English Government has ever been mindful of the rights of the natives in this respect. When **Mr. Cloete** came to Natal as Commissioner, he was instructed "to make it known to the emigrant farmers and native tribes that **the claims of the natives to lands** which they either held or occupied **were to be scrupulously respected.**" Mr. Cloete recommended that the natives should be placed on lands set apart for them in the different districts of the colony. In 1846 Mr. West appointed a commission to arrange for locating the natives in accordance with Mr. Cloete's suggestion. The Commission consisted of Mr. Shepstone, Dr. Stanger, Lieutenant Gibb of the Royal Engineers, and Dr. Adams and Mr. Lindley of the American Mission. Large tracts of land were selected by these gentlemen, and the

natives were moved into them. Each location was suitable for a population of from 10,000 to 12,000 people, and was the property of the tribe collectively. It was intended as part of the scheme to appoint missionaries and officers paid by Government to each location, so that the people might be led from the slough of savagery gradually up the path of civilisation. Money was required for this, and the English Government would not sanction the expense. The natives were accordingly left in their locations enjoying their own laws and customs and subject to no civilising influences except those which the missionaries of the various societies could bring to bear on them.

The **native locations** are generally the most barren, wild, and broken parts of the country. Only small portions here and there are adapted for cultivation, and much of the land is not fitted even for pasturage but only for the habitation of the eagle and the baboon. The number and extent of the locations have been increased since 1846, and the land thus set apart for the natives is about one-sixth of the colony. The kafirs now number about 460,000. They live under the sway of their chiefs as they did before Chaka swept over the land, but the chiefs are no longer despotic. They are subject to the Resident Magistrate of the district, who in his turn is responsible, through the Secretary for Native Affairs, to the Governor as Supreme Chief of the natives. During the forty-five years of the Queen's rule the black subjects of Her Majesty in Natal have been loyal, prosperous, and contented. There has been only one serious disturbance.

A law passed in 1875 increased the number of magistrates; decreed that all native crimes, except political ones, are to be tried in the ordinary courts; and established a **Native High Court** for civil cases. **Mr. Ayliff** was the first

Judge of this Court, an office now held by **Mr. John Shepstone.** These changes will, it is hoped, gradually help to bring the great mass of the natives more into contact with civilised life and its usages.

## A Fruitless Errand.

The farmers who still remained in Natal viewed, with undisguised indignation and alarm, the permanent settlement in locations of the people whom they looked upon as the murderers of their kindred. Before finally resolving to leave Natal they determined to lay their complaints before the Governor of the Cape. **Andries Pretorius** was selected as the messenger, and at the end of 1847 he rode across the Berg and through the Sovereignty to Grahamstown, where Sir Henry Pottinger, the new Governor of the Cape, then was. **Sir Henry Pottinger** refused to see him. Pretorius then presented in writing a statement of the farmers' grievances. The Governor replied that he was going to England at once and would leave these matters for the attention of his successor. Pretorius went back to his countrymen stung to the quick by his reception and with hatred of the English Government raging in his heart. Preparations were at once made for a general trek.

## Sir Harry Smith.

**Sir Harry Smith,** the new Governor and a dashing soldier, had meanwhile arrived at Capetown. The Cape colonists all knew him as the Colonel Smith who rode from Capetown to Grahamstown in six days on the outbreak of the Kafir war of 1834. Sir Harry was as active as ever. He visited the emigrant farmers and the native chiefs in the Orange River Sovereignty and then crossed the Drakensberg into Natal. Near **the Tugela** he found hundreds of

Dutch people under Pretorius waiting to cross when the river went "down." They were going to seek a home in the wilderness. It was the wet season, and men, women, and children were huddled together in tents and wagons, and only poorly protected from the weather. Sir Harry gathered the heads of families together and begged them to go no further. He heard all their grievances and promised that they should be redressed. A new land commission was appointed of which Pretorius was made a member. Farms of 6,000 acres were increased to 8,000; protection against the kafirs was assured to the farmers; and a native police was formed to check the robberies of stock by the Bushmen who then and for years afterwards infested the mountains. Many of the farmers took advantage of the Governor's liberality and settled down in the uplands where they or their children are to this day.

## More Discontent.

It was expected that Sir Harry Smith's tour through the northern districts would result in peace and contentment. When he left the Tugela encampment he visited Pietermaritzburg and Durban and returned to Capetown by sea. Hardly was he back before news was received that a section of the settlers in the Sovereignty was as discontented as ever and plotting against the English Government. **Andries Pretorius** was at the head of the malcontents. He had not joined the land commission of Natal nor taken any advantage of Sir Harry Smith's kindly offers. Many of his countrymen who had a rooted dislike of English rule had crossed the Berg with him and joined the boers of the Orange River Sovereignty. Thus at the beginning of 1848 Natal was left with a settled though small population. The discontented Dutch trekked over the mountain and never

returned; the natives were living peaceably in their locations; and the English and Dutch settlers who remained were contented and loyal colonists.

## Musket and Assegai.

When the first Dutch emigrants crossed the Orange about 1834 they found the great plains east of the Vaal thinly peopled by various native tribes. On both sides of the river near its junction with the Orange there was a nation of half-caste Hottentots. They called themselves **Griquas**—an abbreviation of the name of a Hottentot tribe. Their chiefs were **Adam Kok and Waterboer.** The former, a man of negro blood and once a slave, had gained his freedom, gathered a number of Hottentots and other coloured people round him, and left the Cape for the Bushman country north of the Orange in the early part of the century. He was there joined by freed blacks and refugees of all kinds. As his people increased disputes arose. They resulted in two governments being established, one under himself, the other headed by Waterboer. The whole land from the Orange to the Vaal was claimed by these Griquas and by various tribes of Bechuanas—the **Basutos** under Móshésh, the **Barolongs** under Moroko, and the **Mantatees** under Sikunyela. When the Dutch farmers settled down on the lands of these natives much disorder and bloodshed ensued. In disputes about land the musket generally proved a stronger argument than the assegai. The numbers of the boers were greatly increased by further emigration from the Cape and by the return of their countrymen from Natal after it was proclaimed a British colony. Every man did what was right in his own eyes. With such a mixed population and without a settled government the territory speedily became a scene of violence and confusion.

## The Orange River Sovereignty.

To remedy this state of affairs, **Sir Peregrine Maitland** in 1845 proclaimed the whole country English territory under the name of the **Orange River Sovereignty.** A British Resident, **Major Warden,** with a small detachment of troops, was sent to Bloemfontein, and four magistrates were appointed for the various districts. When Sir Harry Smith visited the Sovereignty on his way to Natal in 1847 he did his best to make peace between the boers and the native tribes and to arrange their land disputes. He was everywhere hailed as "the farmers' friend," and he believed that loyalty and contentment would spring up in his footsteps. The news, therefore, that Andries Pretorius at the head of 400 boers had forced the British Resident and the troops to retire from Bloemfontein and to cross the river to Colesberg came like a thunder-clap on the authorities at Capetown. **Sir Harry Smith,** with a hand for war as well as a heart for peace, lost no time. In a few days he was at the Orange with six or seven hundred men. The rebel boers were encamped on the other side, but retreated hastily when the English force crossed the river. At **Boomplats,** half-way to Bloemfontein, the soldiers found the Dutchmen strongly posted behind a ridge and among broken ground. There was a sharp contest of about three hours ending in the complete discomfiture of the farmers. **Pretorius** escaped with some others and succeeded in crossing **the Vaal.** The British Resident was once more installed at Bloemfontein, and fines were imposed on all who were known to have conspired against the Queen's authority. In 1848 Sir Harry Smith confirmed Sir Peregrine Maitland's proclamation of sovereignty over the territory.

The Sovereignty proved a troublesome possession. There were constant wars between the native chiefs, and Major

Warden reported that a garrison of 2,000 men would be necessary to overawe the natives and keep peace in the country. It was resolved therefore to abandon the Sovereignty, and **Sir George Clerk**, a former Governor of Bombay, was commanded to carry the measure into effect. Amid much opposition from both English and Dutch residents, the English flag was pulled down at Bloemfontein in 1854 and the **Republic of the Orange Free State** established. **Mr. Jacobus Boshoff** was one of the first Presidents. He was a man of great influence among his countrymen, and when elected was Master of the District Court in Natal. When his presidential term expired he returned to Natal, and was for many years a member of the Legislative Council. The new Republic had long and costly wars with the **Basutos** about boundary rights. As Moshesh's people were threatened with extinction, the English Government proclaimed Basutoland British territory in 1868, and in 1869 a definite boundary line was agreed to by the two states. The Orange Free State is now, under **President Reitz,** as under his predecessor **Sir John Brand,** one of the most prosperous territories in South Africa.

## Across the Vaal.

When **Hendrik Potgieter** left his countrymen in Natal after the unsuccessful commando against Dingaan, he and the farmers with him crossed the Vaal into the country then terrorised by Moselekatse. As the hordes of that warlike chieftain had scattered the feeble Bechuanas like chaff, so did the Dutchmen with their horses and muskets hunt him and his warriors down. **Moselekatse** was unable to cope with the terrible newcomers. He speedily took refuge from their muskets in flight, and retreated

across **the Limpopo,** leaving Potgieter and his followers in undisputed possession of the vast territory between that river and the Vaal. In 1839 **Potchefstroom** was founded. Its name is derived partly from the leader, partly from the stream near which it is built. Settlements were then successively made at **Origstad, Zoutpansberg,** and **Lydenburg.** Meanwhile **Andries Pretorius,** who had escaped from Boomplats, fled over the Vaal. Jealousies and disputes about the leadership soon arose between him and Potgieter. In 1852 a treaty was concluded with the English Government called the **Sand River Convention,** by which the independence of the **South African Republic** was acknowledged. Both Pretorius and Potgieter died in 1853, and in 1855 **Marthinus Wessels,** son of Andries Pretorius, was chosen first President of the Republic. **Pretoria,** the capital, was then laid out and named in his honour. Disputes and fighting among the boers themselves and almost continual wars with the natives to the north and north-east make up the history of the Republic until its annexation to England by Sir Theophilus Shepstone in 1877.

## Byrne's Immigrants.

On the departure of the discontented boers in 1848 Natal was left with a small white population. Various schemes for the introduction of English settlers were started. The best known of these was **Byrne's immigration scheme.** Mr. J. C. Byrne, who had visited the colony some years before, arranged with the Government that, for £10, each adult immigrant should receive a free passage to Natal and from 20 to 50 acres of land on arrival. During the years 1848-49-50-51, 57 vessels with about 4,500 people arrived at Durban. One of the ships, the **Minerva,**

parted her cable and came ashore nnder the Blnff. Not only the Minerva's passengers but those who landed in a more agreeable way had to endure many discomforts and hardships. They had to live in tents and sheds and huts until they found means of proceeding to the land allotted to them. Many of those who did succeed in reaching their "farms" were greeted only with disappointment. The land had been divided without any regard to the character of the soil, and the allotments were often only rocky hill sides, ntterly unsuited for tillage. Numbers of the immigrants left Natal for Anstralia in 1852 and 1853, when the gold-fields of that colony were beginning to come before the world. Those who remained brought stout hearts to bear on their disappointment, and besides farming took to trades, shopkeeping, and other occupations. Many prosperous Natalians were passengers by the **King William, the Aliwal, the Haidee, and the Minerva.** The villages of **Verulam, Richmond, Byrnetown,** and **York** were settled by means of this immigration. **New Germany,** near Pinetown, was founded in 1848 by 35 families from Bremen bronght ont by Mr. Bergtheil to grow cotton.

## Sir George Grey.

Lieutenant-Governor West died in 1849, and was succeeded by **Mr. Pine,** afterwards Sir Benjamin Pine. The new Governor thonght that Natal with a European popnlation of over 8,000 was entitled to representative institutions, and he submitted his views to Sir George Grey, the Governor of the Cape. The result was that **Sir George Grey** visited the colony in 1855 to judge of its worthiness in that respect. He mixed with the people, and found among them many, both Dutch and English, who by virtue of knowledge of the country, intelligence, and education, were perfectly

capable of legislating for the community. Sir George Grey accordingly recommended that a representative Legislative Council should be granted to Natal.

## Progress.

New life was infused into the settlement by the arrival of so many English people. Trade began to be opened up with the Orange Free State and the South African Republic, and many of the settlers found occupation as carriers. Both imports and exports increased rapidly. **Mr. George Rutherford,** who succeeded Mr. Field as Collector of Customs in 1853, has seen the value of the imports and of the exports rise from £98,000 and £28,000 in that year to £4,500,000 and £1,700,000 respectively in 1889.

It was found that the coastlands were suitable for growing **sugar cane,** and in 1852 Mr. Morewood planted the first cane at **Compensation**, near Umhlali. The sugar industry gradually increased year by year. The cultivation of **coffee** and **cotton** was also introduced, but did not prove a success.

The "Daily News" in 1850 described Durban as having 500 inhabitants but no municipality and no police. Pietermaritzburg was no better off except in regard to population, which was 1,500 exclusive of the garrison. In 1853 the reproach of "no municipality" was removed. **Corporations** were established in both towns. **Mr. David Dale Buchanan** was the first Mayor of Pietermaritzburg; **Mr. George Christopher Cato**, of Durban.

Schools were established in the two towns and in the smaller settlements by the Government and by the churches. Various religious societies were represented in the young colony. The Dutch Reformed Church, the American Board of Missions, and the Wesleyan Society were first in the

field. From 1850 to 1856 churches were opened in both Pietermaritzburg and Durban in connection with the Roman Catholic, the Presbyterian, and the Congregational denominations. The Church of England may be said to have begun its labours in 1850, when St. Paul's in Durban was built and the **Rev. W. H. C. Lloyd** appointed to the charge. The **Rev. James Green** was the first incumbent of St. Peter's Cathedral in Pietermaritzburg, the foundation-stone of which was laid by Governor Pine in 1851. In 1853 Natal was created a Bishop's See by Her Majesty's Letters Patent. **Dr. Colenso,** afterwards a man of world-wide fame, was the **first Bishop of Natal.** He arrived in February, 1854, and the Cathedral was opened in 1857.

The establishment of agricultural shows, cricket clubs, and races; and of the Natal Bank, the Natal Society, literary societies and benevolent societies, shows that forty years ago the English people in Natal were a stirring though small community and healthy in mind and body. It was not to be expected that Englishmen would sit down quietly in the political bondage which marked the years up to 1856 without a protest and an endeavour to be free. At public meetings and in the newspapers their voice was heard demanding their "unimpaired hereditary right of liberty."

The earliest newspaper printed in Natal was the "**Natalier,**" a small sheet first published in Pietermaritzburg in 1843 by Cornelius Moll. The "Patriot" was the successor of the "Natalier." The "**Natal Witness**" and the "**Natal Mercury,**" both in vigorous existence at the present day, were first published respectively in Pietermaritzburg in 1847 and in Durban in 1852.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Natal annexed to the Cape | ... | ... | 1845 |
| Arrival of the First English Governor | | ... | 1845 |
| Native Locations established | ... | ... | 1846 |
| Exodus of boers from Natal | ... | ... | 1846-1847 |
| Legislative Council granted | ... | ... | 1848 |
| Four Thousand Immigrants arrive in Natal | | ... | 1848-1851 |
| Transvaal Republic founded by Potgieter | | ... | 1839 |
| Orange River Sovereignty proclaimed | | ... | 1845 |
| The Sovereignty relinquished by England | | ... | 1854 |

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### *TWENTY YEARS.*

### A New Governor and a New Constitution.

The recommendations of Sir George Grey were carried into effect in 1856. On the 15th July of that year, **a Royal Charter** was issued constituting **Natal a distinct colony** from the Cape, and creating a Legislative Council of 16 members—twelve elective and four non-elective. The latter were the Colonial Secretary, the Treasurer, the Attorney-General, and the Secretary for Native Affairs. **Mr. John Scott,** now Sir John Scott, who arrived in November, 1856, was the first Lieutenant-Governor under the Charter. The new **Legislative Council** was opened in Maritzburg on the 24th March, 1857, with the Hon. Donald Moodie as its first Speaker, in a building, now pulled down, at the corner of Chapel and Longmarket Streets.

The Council makes laws and votes money for the public service. Its decisions, however, are subject to the approval of the Governor, and in important matters to that of the Queen. The number of both the elective and non-elective members has varied since 1856, changes having occurred in 1869, 1873, 1875, 1880, 1883, and 1889.

In 1869 the number of official members was increased to five by the addition of the Protector of Immigrants. His seat was afterwards taken by the Colonial Engineer. It was decreed also that the Executive Council should include two elective members of the Legislative Council.

In 1873 the number of elective members was increased from twelve to fifteen.

In 1875 eight non-elective members, nominated by the Governor, were added to the Legislative Council, which thus consisted of 15 elective members and 13 non-elective.

In 1880 the Charter of 1869 was reverted to, which fixed the number of members as 12 elective and 5 official.

In 1883 a law still in force decreed that the Legislative Council should consist of 30 members, 23 of whom are elective sent by the ten electoral districts of the colony. The **seven non-elective members** consist of 5 official and 2 non-official members appointed by the Governor.

The counties of Alexandra and Alfred, which previously returned only one member between them, were in 1889 formed into two electoral districts with separate representatives. That amendment of the law of 1883 increased the number of **elective members** to **twenty-four.**

Every man over 21 years of age who possesses immovable property of the value of £50, or who rents any such property of the yearly value of £10, is entitled to vote for members of the Legislative Council. Lodgers also possess this right if they have resided for three years in the colony and have incomes of not less than £96 a year.

A law passed in 1865 debarred natives from the franchise, excepting those who had been exempted from Native Law for seven years and who also possessed the usual property qualification.

## Cetywayo and Umbulazi.

The year in which Natal became a separate colony witnessed serious troubles in Zululand. **Panda** had always been faithful to his Dutch allies who had crowned him king, and he had also loyally kept the treaty of peace and friendship which Mr. Cloete made with him on behalf of the new rulers of Natal. During his long reign of 32 years no raids across the Tugela disturbed the peace of Natal colonists. That boundary line was always strictly respected. The Zulu military system was continued, but hemmed in as the nation was by the English to the south and by the Dutch in the inland territories to the west, there were no such opportunities for fight and foray as in the "good old times" of Chaka and Dingaan. The chiefs kept at the royal kraal on military duty were often sent away empty-handed when their term of service was over. The feasting had departed with the fighting. Panda himself had little of the warlike spirit, and in his later years his great size effectually prevented bodily activity of any kind. When he wanted to get into a wagon it was necessary to take off the front wheels. His eldest son, **Cetywayo,** was a man of a different stamp. His tastes were warlike and he manifested much of

the military ability of his nncle Chaka. Cetywayo snspected his father of favouring the pretensions of his younger brother, **Umbulazi,** to the chieftainship, and he gathered ronnd him many of the young men of the tribe who looked to him as the chief destined to restore the departed glory of the Zulus. Umbnlazi also had a party attached to him, and when the two factions met for hunting or other purposes their enmity often assumed an alarming aspect. This fraternal strife tronbled Panda sorely, and he gave Umbnlazi permission to move sonth with his adherents and to build his kraals near the Tugela. At this juncture, Panda's chief indnna, Umasipula, declared himself on the side of Cetywayo. Thns reinforced, Cetywayo pursued his brother. The two forces met on the **banks of the Tugela** in December, 1856, and a dreadfnl massacre ensued. Cetywayo was completely victorions. Umbnlazi himself was slain and his unfortnnate followers were speared by thousands or drowned in the flooded river. Five sons of Panda besides Umbulazi were killed in the battle. The townspeople of Durban were horror-stricken at beholding for days afterwards the Back Beach strewn with bodies washed thither from the Tugela, mute witnesses of the carnage which had taken place so near the quiet English settlement.

## " Mayor of the Palace."

The battle by the Tugela removed all donbts as to who wonld be Panda's snccessor. Umbnlazi and his party thus pnt ont of the way, the power of Cetywayo grew every day greater, and he held supreme sway in Zululand long before his father's death. At a great meeting of the tribe held in 1857, it was resolved that Panda, who was nnable to move about, should retire from the management of affairs, and that Cetywayo, assisted by Umasipula, the

prime minister, should be the actual ruler. Panda was thenceforth a king in name only, like the "sluggard kings" of the Merovingians, while **Cetywayo** was **"Mayor of the Palace."** About the time of Cetywayo's conflict with Umbulazi, two young sons of Panda, Usikota and Umkungo, were secretly sent into Natal and placed under the protection of the Government. The old king feared that they too might fall victims to their eldest brother's jealousy should they remain in Zululand. These lads never recrossed the Tugela. **Usikota** is dead; **Umkungo** is chief of a section of the Amazulu tribe located near Estcourt. Cetywayo seemed to suspect that the Natal Government, by affording his brothers refuge, favoured them as rivals to himself in the supreme power. To remove this feeling of distrust, **Mr. Shepstone,** in 1861, proceeded to the great place in Zululand, with the object of inducing Panda to elect Cetywayo as his successor. The old king's consent was given and **Cetywayo** was officially announced as **the future King.** From this time until Panda's death in 1872, friendly relations continued to be maintained with the Zulus.

## Visit of Prince Alfred.

In 1860 Natal was honoured by a visit from **Prince Alfred,** the second son of the Queen, and now known as the Duke of Edinburgh. He was then a lad of fifteen, serving as a midshipman in the frigate **Euryalus.** His Royal Highness spent two months in South Africa and, accompanied by Sir George Grey, made a tour by way of the inland states from Capetown to Natal. At both Maritzburg and Durban the townspeople gave him a loyal welcome. An immense kafir dance was the feature of the entertainments in Maritzburg, and a ball in Durban. Prince Alfred

laid the foundation-stone of a Town Hall in the capital. After the lapse of 30 years the stone has been relaid and the Hall is now being built.

Noman's Land, annexed to the colony in 1866, was named **Alfred County** in remembrance of the Prince's visit. This "Debateable Land" between the Umtamvuna and the Umzimkulu was for many years under the nominal sway of **Faku,** the Amapondo chief. He found himself unable to control its mixed population and handed it over to Imperial protection. The inland part was granted by the English Government to **Adam Kok** and his people when they left the Free State in 1860. The coast region was constituted part of Natal during Colonel Bisset's administration.

## Railway and Omnibus.

The year of the Royal visit was marked by two important onward movements in the path of progress. A **railway,** which was afterwards continued to Umgeni Village, was opened from the Point to Durban; and an **omnibus** drawn by horses began to run weekly between Durban and Maritzburg.

The small railway, begun by a company of Natalians, was the first worked in South Africa and the forerunner of the line of steel which now stretches from the Indian Sea to the Berg. Before it was made all goods landed at the Point were conveyed by ox-wagons through the deep sand of what was by courtesy called the **Point Road.** Pedestrians could avoid the blazing sun and the burning sand by taking the shady bush-path, now numbered with the things that were. Few or none of the townspeople kept carriages in those days of sand, and horseback was the usual mode of getting from place to place.

The horse wagonette or 'bus which began to jolt up and down the main road in 1860 was a great improvement on the leisurely ox-wagon which even in good weather took three or four days to travel the fifty-eight miles. The 'bus performed the journey in about eleven hours, allowing the passengers a rest at the **Halfway House.** This conveyance ran daily in later years, and the post-cart which did the journey in six hours also took passengers. Coaching from the port to the city ceased with the opening of the railway, and very few vehicles except an occasional ox-wagon are now seen on the road.

## Indian Labourers.

The growing industries of the coastlands—sugar, coffee, cotton, and arrowroot—demanded a surer supply of labour than could be obtained from the native tribes in the colony. To meet the necessities of the plantations, indentured labourers or **"Coolies"** were first brought from India in 1860. The immigration has been continued ever since. Comparatively few of these Indian labourers return to their native land on the completion of their period of service. They now equal the Europeans in respect of numbers. The "free" Indians are actively engaged as market gardeners, hawkers, and traders.

## Diamonds.

In 1867 a discovery was made which brought prosperity to South Africa and a rush of people to its shores. A trader, John O'Reilly, on his way from the Orange River to Colesberg, halted to rest at the farm-house of one Van Niekerk in the Hopetown district. The farmer showed O'Reilly some Orange River stones among which was one of lustrous whiteness. Van Niekerk gave it to his visitor

telling him it was picked up near the house by a Bushman boy. The stone was examined in Grahamstown and pronounced to be a **diamond** worth £500. A search was at once begun but met with little success for two years. In 1869 Van Niekerk discovered that a Hottentot was in possession of a large stone and purchased it for £400. This diamond, the "**Star of South Africa,**" weighed $83\frac{1}{2}$ carats uncut, and was estimated in 1870 to be worth £25,000. It is now owned by the Countess of Dudley. There was soon an immense rush of diggers to the district, and the banks of the Vaal from its junction with the Orange as far up as Hebron were carefully prospected for the precious stones. In the year 1870 thirty or forty camps, with a population of about 10,000, were dotted all along the river. **Klipdrift** or Barkly was the chief.

About the end of that year the discovery of diamonds midway between the Vaal and the Modder, near where **Kimberley** now stands, caused the river diggings to be almost deserted. Discomforts of all kinds—sand and blazing heat, dust-storms, swarms of flies, and scarcity of water—had to be endured in the early years by the diggers on the Diamond Fields. Impure water and coarse food brought on camp fever which swept off many of the diggers and which it took many years to stamp out. Twenty years have effected a marvellous change in the Diamond Fields. Large towns have risen in the arid waste. Kimberley is one of the finest towns in South Africa, lighted by electricity, and supplied with water from the Vaal River 20 miles distant. The great **Kimberley** mine, now worked by one company, opens close to the busy streets in the centre of the town which has grown up around it. The mine was at first a small hill, **Colesberg Kopje,** but has been gradually levelled and dug into until it is now an immense quarry over 800

feet deep at its lowest level and about 30 acres in extent. In this great pit thousands of natives are employed filling buckets with the blue clay in which the diamonds are found.

The three other large mines in which the diamond industry is chiefly centred are **De Beer's, Dutoitspan,** and **Bultfontein.** The four mines are so near each other that a circle $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles in diameter would enclose the whole. The yield of diamonds from these mines has been enormous. From Kimberley mine alone, about $3\frac{1}{2}$ tons, worth £20,000,000, have been obtained from its discovery in 1871 to the end of 1885. The value of the diamonds produced from all the mines from 1867 to 1888 is about £45,000,000. The fabled wealth of the Empire of **Monomotapa,** vainly sought for two hundred years ago by **Mr. Van Riebeek,** has at last been realised in the Golconda of the Vaal River.

## Waterboer and the Free State.

The diggers on the Diamond Fields were ruled by Orange Free State officials till 1871. **Nicholas Waterboer,** the chief of the west Griquas, also claimed the territory. Supported by the diggers, he petitioned the English Government to annex the Fields. In 1871 Sir Henry Barkly proclaimed Waterboer and his tribe English subjects and their territory English territory. **The Free State** disputed the right of England to annex the district, and it was not till 1876 that matters were amicably settled. In that year President Brand visited England and agreed to give up all claim to **Griqua Land West** for the sum of £90,000. The province, after being governed as a separate colony until 1880, was in that year incorporated with the Cape Colony.

## Changes of Governors.

**Colonel Maclean** succeeded Mr. Scott as Lieutenant-Governor of Natal in 1864. His ill-health, however, com-

pelled him to retire and his place was taken by **Colonel Bisset** until **Mr. Keate** arrived in 1867. Mr. Keate was succeeded in 1872 by **Mr. Anthony Musgrave**, who was shortly afterwards promoted to South Australia. **Sir Benjamin Pine**, who as Mr. Pine had been Governor before, came in 1873 and began his second term of office.

## A Peaceful Invasion.

**King Panda** died in 1872. His death was formally announced by Zulu messengers who came to Maritzburg in the beginning of 1873. They brought a request from Cetywayo and his people that Mr. Shepstone should proceed to Zululand and install Cetywayo as head of the Zulu nation. The Natal Government consented to the request in the hope that the ceremony would strengthen cordial relations between Natal and the Zulus, and that Mr. Shepstone by his presence and influence would be able to introduce some reforms into the Zulu government and to prevent the bloodshed which always signalised the accession of a new chief. Accordingly, in August 1873, **Mr. Shepstone**, attended by 110 mounted volunteers with two field pieces and 300 natives, went into Zululand by way of the Noodsberg and Tugela mouth. The band of the Maritzburg Rifles accompanied the expedition. The natives in Zululand were everywhere friendly. The party travelled past Etshowe, crossed the upper waters of the Umlalazi and the broad valley of the Umhlatoos, and climbed to Emtonjaneni, one of the highest points in Zululand. The wide basin of the **Umfolosi**, the cradle of the Zulu race, then lay stretched before them. Mr. Shepstone and his escort encamped in the valley close by the royal kraal of Senzangakona, the father of Chaka. There they were welcomed by an aged woman, one of Senzangakona's wives. Some of the party explored the

ruins of **Umgungundhlovu,** a few miles to the west of the camp, and stood in the circle where Retief and his hapless comrades had been fallen upon by the myrmidons of Dingaan.

## Coronation of Cetywayo.

The coronation ceremony took place on the north side of the Umfolosi at a kraal named **Umlambongwenya,** *pool of the crocodile*, where a military marquee was erected for the occasion. About 10,000 Zulus armed only with sticks and shields were ranged round the kraal. Before the coronation took place, Mr. Shepstone proclaimed that with the assent of king and people certain new laws had been made. These were that

(1.) Indiscriminate shedding of blood was to cease;

(2.) No Zulu would be condemned without open trial and the public examination of witnesses, and that he would have a right of appeal to the king;

(3.) No Zulu's life would be taken without the sanction of the king even after such trial had taken place; and

(4.) For minor crimes, a fine would be substituted for the punishment of death.

Cetywayo with one attendant then went into the marquee with Mr. Shepstone and his staff. He emerged soon afterwards, arrayed in a crimson-and-gold mantle and a head-dress of crimson velvet and gold lace surmounted by ostrich feathers. In these robes he was presented to his brothers and head-men as the **King of the Zulus.** Cetywayo agreed that Amatonga natives on their way to and from Natal should be allowed to travel through Zululand, and he authorised Mr. John Dunn, his chief adviser, to arrange for resting-places being provided for them. **John Dunn,**

a son of one of the early English settlers, was then high in Cetywayo's favour, although he had fought on the side of Umbulazi at the battle by the Tugela. The marquee, the coronation robes, and other presents were bestowed on Cetywayo, who in return presented Mr. Shepstone with several tusks of ivory and a herd of cattle. The expedition recrossed the Tugela on the 11th September.

## The Amahlubi.

Trouble had for some time been brewing with the **Amahlubi.** This tribe, under its chief **Langalibalele,** occupied the open rolling country round the sources of the Bushman River, from Tabamhlope to the great mountain-wall of the Berg, where it presents its most impenetrable front to Natal—between Cathkin Peak and Giant's Castle. After the dispersion of the tribe in the time of Chaka a remnant settled down near Utrecht under Langalibalele as tributaries to the Zulu power. There they remained until attacked by Panda in 1849, when they moved to the upper part of the Klip River by the permission of Lieutenant-Governor West. As the land occupied by the tribe was claimed by some Dutch farmers, Langalibalele was removed, very unwillingly, to the location on the upper waters of the Bushman River, there to act as a kind of **Warden of the Marches.** It was thought that the presence of a large tribe would keep in check the Bushmen banditti who then infested the mountain.

Langalibalele had great influence among the natives. Compared with him Cetywayo was an upstart of yesterday. When the Amazulu were despised "tobacco-sellers," the Amahlubi were the most powerful tribe in south-eastern Africa, and Langalibalele was the recognised head of the race. Besides his dignity of birth he had the reputation of

being a great sorcerer. He was a "rain-maker" and could at will command a flood or a drought. His attitude had never been one of prompt compliance with the orders of the Government.

## Unregistered Guns.

Many of the young men of the Amahlubi, in common with other Natal natives, went to work in the diamond mines on the Vaal. When they returned to their kraals they brought back with them guns which they had obtained at the Fields as wages or had purchased with their savings. The law about natives possessing firearms is not as strict at the Diamond Fields as it is in Natal, where no native is allowed to possess a gun unless with the special permission of the Government. It came to the knowledge of the magistrate of Langalibalele's division that guns had been seen in his kraals, and messengers were sent to demand that they should be brought to the magistrate's office for registration. Langalibalele complied with the order so far as to send a few, but it was known that the greater number had been held back. No notice was taken of subsequent and repeated demands for the guns by the magistrate. The chief himself was then summoned to appear at Maritzburg before the Secretary for Native Affairs to explain his conduct. Twice he was summoned and twice he failed to come. This happened before Mr. Shepstone went into Zululand. When he returned, a third message was sent to Langalibalele requiring his presence in Maritzburg and informing him that if he did not come willingly he would be brought by force. The Government messengers sent on this errand reported that the chief grossly insulted and maltreated them. Langalibalele did not appear in answer to the final summons, and accordingly a force, consisting of

200 regulars, 300 volunteers, and about 6,000 natives, with two field pieces, moved up to the Amahlubi location on the 29th October. The Lieutenant-Governor, **Sir Benjamin Pine,** and **Mr. Shepstone** accompanied the force. **Hlatikulu** was the head-quarters of the troops, and detachments were posted all round the location.

## Bushman River Pass.

Notice was then given to the Amahlubi to surrender their arms within three days. Langalibalele had meanwhile escaped by the unguarded mountain-side of his location. With a small party of attendants he went into Basutoland by the **Bushman River Pass.** The young men of the tribe, under the guidance of **Mabuhle,** an induna, had orders to follow with the cattle. The old men, women, and children were to remain in the kraals guarded by small bodies of armed natives left for that purpose. It was suspected that Langalibalele would endeavour to escape by the mountain, and a patrol party of **37 Carbineers,** under **Major Durnford,** of the Royal Engineers, and **Captain Barter,** was sent with native guides up by Giant's Castle Pass to guard the top of Bushman River Pass. The volunteers had a perilous and toilsome climb of 4,000 feet up what was little else than a water-worn gully in the mountain. When they arrived at the top of Bushman River Pass early on the morning of the 4th November, faint and weary from want of food and want of sleep, they found they were a day too late. Langalibalele had passed through into Basutoland hours before, and all the defile was filled with cattle driven by a great number of natives armed with guns and assegais. Major Durnford attempted to stop their progress by drawing his men in a line across the pass and calling on them to surrender. No heed was paid to him,

and the natives forced their way on past the volunteers, whom they jostled and surrounded. The attitude of the kafirs was defiant in the extreme. They taunted and jeered at the white men and ostentatiously sharpened their assegais on the stones. Seeing the overwhelming numbers he had to deal with, Major Durnford commanded his men to retire. They had just begun to fall back at a trot when a volley was poured in on them by kafirs sheltered behind the rocks and stones of the pass. Five men were shot, three of the Natal Carbineers—Erskine, Bond, and Potterill—and two natives. The little band of volunteers retired beyond the range of fire, and Mabuhle, the treacherous induna, with his people and cattle, went on his way.

The three Carbineers and the two natives were buried some days afterwards in the desolate pass where they fell. There is a monument in the Market Square of Maritzburg erected by the Natal Carbineers and the colonists in memory of **Robert Henry Erskine, Edwin Bond,** and **Charles Davie Potterill,** and **Elijah Kambule** and **Katana,** loyal natives, who fell "in discharge of their duty" at the Bushman River Pass on the 4th November, 1873.

## End of the Rebellion.

A strong party under Captain Allison was at once sent in pursuit of the fugitive chief. **Langalibalele,** joined by Mabuhle's party with the cattle, made his way to **Leribe,** the village of **Molappo,** the Basuto chief, one of the sons of Moshesh. There he was arrested with nine of his headmen by the Cape Mounted Police, who also were out in pursuit, and given up to Captain Allison on the 13th of December. Five thousand cattle were captured at the same time. **Mabuhle,** the induna, disappeared.

At the end of the three days' grace the troops took possession of the Amahlubi location. Many of the people

fled to the caves and natural hiding-places which abound in the mountain. Some made a stubborn resistance to the efforts made to dislodge them, and loss of life to natives on both sides was the result. The tribe was broken up and proclaimed as having "ceased to exist," and all the cattle and horses were confiscated. A neighbouring tribe, the **Amangwe,** under **Putili,** living along the Little Tugela, was fined 2,000 head of cattle for harbouring both people and cattle belonging to the rebel tribe.

Langalibalele was tried in Maritzburg by a special court and sentenced for "rebellion against the Supreme Chief" to banishment for life. One of his sons who had fired on the troops was banished for five years. Six other sons were imprisoned for various periods, as were also over 200 men of the tribe. Some of them, however, were allowed to serve their terms of punishment as servants in the colony. The old chief and one son were sent to Robben Island, off Table Bay, in August, 1874. Owing to a plea made on their behalf by the Bishop of Natal their sentence was somewhat mitigated by the Earl of Carnarvon, who was then Secretary of State. Instead of being kept on Robben Island, they were permitted to live under strict supervision on a part of the mainland of Cape Colony set apart for that purpose.

**Langalibalele** was allowed to return to Natal in 1886, but the light of the *great sun which shines and burns* was effectually quenched. He died in 1889. One of his sons, Siyepu, is living in the old location and many of the tribe are collecting round him, but he has no authority as a chief from the Government.

## Sir Garnet Wolseley.

The trouble with the Amahlubi tribe brought the native population of Natal prominently before the home authorities.

As the result of a consultation which **Lord Carnarvon** held with **Mr. Shepstone,** the Native High Court was established and an additional number of magistrates was appointed to the native locations. When Sir Benjamin Pine went to England in 1875, the famous soldier **Sir Garnet Wolseley,** now Lord Wolseley, was sent out to Natal as temporary Governor. He was accompanied by **Colonel Colley, Major Butler, Major Brackenbury,** and **Captain Lord Gifford,** officers who had been with him through the Ashanti war. Sir Garnet Wolseley's mission was to report on the condition of the natives and the relations subsisting between them and the European inhabitants, and also, in consequence of the native difficulty through which the colony had passed, to increase the power of the Executive in the Legislative Council by the appointment of members nominated by the Governor. Sir Garnet and his staff stayed five months in Natal. After visiting all the districts of the colony, "upland and lowland, thorn thicket and sugar field," including the wildest native locations, Sir Garnet Wolseley was able to report to Lord Carnarvon that "the natives in Natal are happy and prosperous—well-off in every sense" and that they and their white neighbours were on the best of terms. Sir Garnet succeeded in passing a law by which the Legislative Council was made to consist of five Executive officers, eight nominee members, and fifteen elected members. This law remained in force for five years, until 1880, when the Charter of 1869 was again put in force.

When Sir Garnet Wolseley left in August, 1875, **Sir Henry Bulwer** arrived as Lieutenant-Governor. He is the nephew of the distinguished novelist Lord Lytton and was governor of Labuan before his appointment to Natal. **Mr. Rider Haggard,** now a well-known novelist, came

with the new Governor, and his stay in Natal and afterwards in the Transvaal, where he was on the staff of Sir Theophilns Shepstone, furnished him with material for many of his stories. In the same year **Mr. J. A. Froude,** the historian, visited Natal in the course of a tour throngh South Africa.

## Turning the First Sod.

The need of a railway from the port to the inland states and to the various producing districts of the colony had long engaged the attention of Natalians. If Natal were to hold her own with the rest of South Africa in trade and general progress, some quicker and more economical means of conveyance than the primitive ox-wagon had to be provided. The year 1875 saw the beginning of the undertaking when authority was given for the constrnction of a railway from Dnrban to Maritzburg with a branch line sonth to Isipingo and another from the Umgeni to Verulam. The estimated cost of the line, £1,200,000, was raised by loan. The little railway from the Point to the Umgeni, which had done good service in bygone days, was bought by the Government for £40,000 and made part of the Natal Government Railways. **Sir Henry Bulwer turned the first sod at Durban on the first day of 1876** amid great rejoicing and enthnsiasm. When the line from the port to the capital was completed in 1880, immediate steps were taken for its extension. At the end of 1886 it had reached Ladysmith. The **Natal line** of steel now links Durban with both **the Transvaal at Charlestown** and **the Orange Free State at Van Reenen's Pass.** A line has been surveyed as far as Stanger, and the steam-horse will soon be puffing towards **Zululand.** The success of the railway has amply jnstified its construction.

| | |
|---|---|
| Natal constituted a separate colony ... | 1856 |
| Battle between Cetywayo and Umbulazi ... | 1856 |
| Visit of Prince Alfred ... ... ... | 1860 |
| Point Railway opened ... ... ... | 1860 |
| Indian Labourers introduced ... ... | 1860 |
| Cetywayo nominated Panda's successor by Mr. Shepstone ... ... ... ... | 1861 |
| Alfred County annexed ... ... ... | 1866 |
| Diamond Fields discovered... ... | ...1867—1871 |
| Changes in the Charter 1869 1873 1875 1880 | 1883 |
| Diamond Fields proclaimed English territory | 1871 |
| Rebellion of Langalibalele ... ... | 1873 |
| Coronation of Cetywayo by Mr. Shepstone ... | 1873 |
| First Sod of Natal Government Railways turned ... ... ... ... | 1876 |
| Diamond Fields annexed to the Cape ... | 1880 |
| Railways completed to the Border... ... | 1891 |

---

## CHAPTER X.

### *ZULULAND.*

### The Transvaal in Trouble.

The Republic north of the Vaal was not destined for many a year to enjoy the uneventful and prosperous existence that fell to the lot of the Orange Free State. There was almost continual war within her gates both with native chiefs and among the boer leaders themselves. When the

**Rev. Thomas Burgers** was elected President in 1872, many of the people hoped that better days had dawned for the Transvaal. These hopes were not fulfilled. Mr. Burgers was a man of liberal ideas and possessed of great talents and eloquence, but his new-fangled notions were not acceptable to the majority of the boers and he never gained their confidence. He prohibited religious instruction in schools, and he introduced a new education system which was never carried out. He designed a new flag and coat-of-arms which the Volksraad would not accept, and he attempted to create a new coinage by having some gold coins struck with his own likeness, coins which were never used except as ornaments for watch chains. A railway from Delagoa Bay was one of President Burgers' schemes, and he went to Europe in 1875 to make a treaty with Portugal and to raise a loan for its construction. This project also ended in nothing. When he returned in 1876 the Republic was in difficulties with a native chief, **Sikukuni,** head of a Bechuana tribe named the **Bapidi.** The tribe occupied the mountainous region south of Olifant's River, and their country was claimed by the Dutch under a treaty made with Sikukuni's father. The chief refused to pay taxes and raided the farms near his location. When he was asked for redress he claimed nearly all the Lydenburg and Pretoria districts of the Republic. The Volksraad then declared war, and a commando moved into Sikukuni's country. **Mathebi's Kop,** which President Burgers called the "Gibraltar of South Africa," was taken, but the rest of the campaign was disastrous to the Dutch. A kind of hollow peace was arranged and Sikukuni agreed to bow to the Republic and pay 2,000 head of cattle. He afterwards repudiated the treaty and he never delivered the cattle.

## Sir Theophilus Shepstone.

The troubles in the Transvaal alarmed the English Government, for the fact that the boers found themselves unable to quell the rebellion of a comparatively insignificant tribe created much excitement in the native mind throughout South Africa Believing that the general peace of the colonies there was in peril, the Government sent out a special commissioner to confer with the Transvaal authorities and to watch the course of events. This commissioner was **Sir Theophilus Shepstone,** who happened to be in London at the time. He arrived in Pretoria in January, 1877, and was well received by the townspeople. He found that the affairs of the Republic were hopeless. All faith in the President was gone. The public coffers were empty and the people would no longer pay taxes. Trade was entirely destroyed. The Government had no power either to control its own subjects or to defend them against their native enemies, Sikukuni and Cetywayo, who might at any moment overrun the Republic. In these circumstances, Sir Theophilus Shepstone considered that the only way to save the country was to proclaim it **English territory.** This was done peacefully at **Pretoria** on the 12th April, 1877, and the boers were once more under English rule. No resistance was openly made to the annexation, it being regarded by the majority of the Dutch as a nccessary evil at the time. Sir Theophilus Shepstone continued in office as Administrator of the new colony until March, 1879, when he was succeeded by **Sir Owen Lanyon.**

## Sikukuni and Cetywayo.

From the Republic the English Government inherited feuds with two native chiefs. **Sikukuni** defied the English as he had defied the Dutch, and an expedition sent against

him in 1878 failed to oust him from his rocky stronghold. A renewed attack with the assistance of the Amaswazi was made at the end of 1879 under Sir Garnet Wolseley's directions, and was successful. Sikukuni was taken prisoner and conveyed to Pretoria. He was afterwards released, and on his return to his own country was murdered by one of his minor chiefs.

**Cetywayo** had a dispute of long standing with the Republic regarding a large tract of land between the Buffalo and the Pongola occupied as Transvaal territory by Transvaal subjects. This territory Cetywayo claimed, and, some months after the Transvaal had been annexed by England, he built military kraals in it and gave all Europeans and natives therein peremptory notice to quit. Having thus taken forcible possession of that part of the country, the Zulu King made further extravagant claims to the land beyond the Blood River and the Pongola. Sir Theophilus Shepstone, as Administrator of the Transvaal, attempted to arrange a settlement of the dispute, and with that intent proceeded in 1877 towards the Zulu frontier on the Blood River. Cetywayo did not meet these advances in a friendly spirit and refused to discuss the matter, demanding the immediate cession of the land in dispute. He ultimately, however, consented to a suggestion made by **Sir Henry Bulwer** that a commission should make an enquiry into the rival claims, and that the Transvaal Government and the Zulus should abide by its decision. The Natal Commissioners gave in their report in June, 1878, but the whole question and the final award were left for the consideration of **Sir Bartle Frere,** the Governor of the Cape and High Commissioner for South Africa, who arrived in Natal in September of the same year.

## The Zulu King's Offences.

**Sir Bartle Frere** considered not only the boundary dispute but the general relations of the Zulu King with the civilised states of South Africa. These relations were not satisfactory to the English authorities. In a Memorandum by Sir Bartle Frere, dated January, 1879, he enumerated the causes of offence given by **Cetywayo.**

At his coronation by Mr. Shepstone in 1873, the King made solemn promises that a better and more humane government should be inaugurated in Zululand, and that he would live at peace with his neighbours. He fulfilled neither of these promises. Human life had no more sanctity after his coronation than it had before. He caused a number of girls to be barbarously massacred. When remonstrated with by the Lieutenant-Governor of Natal, Cetywayo replied in insolent and defiant terms, denying the promises made at his coronation, and avowing his intention of doing as he liked and as Chaka and Dingaan had done before him. Cetywayo made Zululand a garrison of soldiers as it was in the time of his warlike uncles. All the young men of the country bore arms. Assegais were supplemented by rifles which, with ammunition, could be obtained without the slightest difficulty through Delagoa Bay. No Zulu was allowed to settle down to a quiet domestic life, to plant and sow and reap and tend his cattle. This military despotism was a standing menace to Cetywayo's neighbours, black and white, and no solid peace could be assured for South Africa as long as it existed. A Swazi chief, **Umbeline,** living in Zululand under Cetywayo's protection, made a raid north of the Pongola into Transvaal territory and murdered many of the natives. Some were carried off as captives, and the cattle were seized as booty. In July, 1878, two women of the tribe of Usirayo, a chief whose

kraals were near Rorke's Drift, fled across the Buffalo into the Umsinga location for protection. They were followed by an armed party headed by **a brother and three sons of Usirayo** and dragged out of a police hut where they had taken refuge. The women were taken into Zululand, and it is believed put to death. Sir Henry Bulwer demanded from Cetywayo that the chiefs who had thus violated English territory should be given up for trial. The Zulu King excused their proceedings as "a boyish excess," and offered a sum of money as a fine for the offence. A repeated demand for the culprits produced no result. The English, German, and Norwegian missionaries, who had settled in Zululand with the permission of Panda, were intimidated and at last obliged to leave the country. The missionary converts were threatened and three of them killed. Repeated notices to quit were sent in the King's name to English subjects settled north of the Pongola, and these intimations were emphasised by constant raids.

The High Commissioner, after consultation with the Natal authorities, came to the conclusion that the condition of Zululand was a disquieting and disturbing element in the peace and progress of South Africa and that the English Government could not allow it to continue. It was therefore decided that, when **the award regarding the boundary** should be made known to the Zulu King and people, **certain other demands** should be made upon them, necessary for the welfare of both themselves and their neighbours.

## The Ultimatum.

The document which contained these demands is known as **the Ultimatum.** It was delivered, along with the boundary award, on the 11th December, 1878, to Zulu

deputies at the Lower Tugela by the English commissioners, **Mr. Brownlee, Mr. John Shepstone, Colonel Walker,** of the Scots Guards, and **Mr. H. F. Fynn.** The Zulu King was represented by fourteen chiefs, of whom **Uvumandaba** was head, and forty attendants. The place of meeting was near to where Biggar's rash expedition was overpowered by Dingaan forty years before. Close by too was the scene of Umbulazi's defeat in 1856 when 3,000 natives were slain and washed down the Tugela. The two documents containing the boundary award and the ultimatum were read to the chiefs by **Mr. Fynney** in both Zulu and English. The award of the Commissioners was in favour of the Zulu claims and gave Cetywayo sovereignty over the disputed territory, with the condition that white settlers who had acquired farms there after 1861 should retain them.

**The ultimatum demanded from Cetywayo**

(1.) The surrender of Umbeline;

(2.) The surrender of the sons and brother of Usirayo;

(3.) A fine of 500 cattle for his contempt of Sir Henry Bulwer's demand that the criminals should be given up; and

(4.) A fine of 100 cattle for the conduct of certain Zulus in surrounding and hustling two surveyors of the Royal Engineers' Department when engaged in observations at the Tugela.

**Other requirements** were made in the ultimatum **with respect to the future government of Zululand.** They were that Cetywayo should

(1.) Receive a British Resident;

(2.) Disband his regiments;

(3.) Allow his young men to marry;

(4.) Observe his coronation promises regarding unjust shedding of blood;

(5.) Re-admit missionaries into Zululand; and

(6.) Make war only with the consent of the British Resident and the national council.

**Twenty days** were allowed to Cetywayo to comply with the first set of demands, and **thirty days** to comply with the second. The Zulu deputies looked pleased when the boundary award was read to them, but their faces grew grave when they fully realised what the ultimatum demanded from their king. Compliance with its requirements meant the effacement of the despotism which for sixty years had been the unquestioned supreme power among the natives of South Africa, a position which its pretentious name of **Izulu,** *the heavens*, claimed and emphasised.

## At the Border.

For months before the Ultimatum was presented to Cetywayo active preparations were made by the Imperial authorities for a possible struggle. Week after week troops and munitions of war were landed at Durban and conveyed to the border. By the end of 1878 Zululand was guarded from the Tugela mouth to the sources of the Buffalo. All the corps of **mounted volunteers** in the colony were called out for the defence of the border, and the call was promptly and patriotically answered. Three regiments of **Natal natives** were formed and named the Natal Native Contingent. The whole force was commanded by **General Lord Chelmsford,** who, as General Thesiger, had quelled the kafir rebellion under Kreli and Sandilli on the Cape Frontier in 1877. Besides the Native Contingent, the force under his command numbered about 6,600 Europeans, 1,400 of them mounted, and comprised **all branches of the**

service. The troops were massed on the border in three main divisions.

**Colonel Pearson** of the Buffs was in command of the first column at the **Tugela Mouth.** Two camps were constructed near the river—Fort Pearson on the Natal side, and Fort Tenedos on the Zulu side. The column consisted of 14 companies of the Buffs and the 99th, one company of Royal Engineers, 270 men of the Naval Brigade from H.M.S. Active and Tenedos, 200 mounted infantry, and 200 volunteers belonging to the Durban Mounted Rifles, the Alexandra Mounted Rifles, the Victoria Mounted Rifles, the Stanger Mounted Rifles, and the Natal Hussars—numbering in all, with the Native Contingent, over 4,000 men.

The main column, accompanied by the General commanding, was encamped at **Helpmakaar. Colonel Glyn** of the 24th was in command, and the column consisted of 15 companies of the 24th Regiment, a squadron of mounted infantry, 150 Natal Mounted Police, and the Natal Carbineers, Buffalo Border Guard, and Newcastle Mounted Rifles, besides 4,000 natives.

The third column had **Utrecht** for its base and was encamped in the disputed Transvaal territory. It was under the command of **Colonel Evelyn Wood, V.C.,** and comprised the 13th and 90th Regiments, Colonel Buller's Frontier Light Horse, and a force of natives.

When the volunteers left for the border **Town Guards** were at once established in Maritzburg and Durban.

## War with Cetywayo.

The first period of 20 days allowed to Cetywayo expired on the last day of 1878 and he had not sent any intimation of compliance with the demands of the Ultimatum. Sir Bartle Frere then threw away the scabbard. Cetywayo's

silence, he notified, could mean nothing but defiance, and he placed the "demands for redress and reparation in the hands of Lieutenant-General Lord Chelmsford." That was a **declaration of war.**

On the 10th of January, 1879, just previous to the expiration of the 30 days, John Dunn with about 2,000 people crossed the Tugela into Natal. About the same time news came from Colonel Wood that the Zulus were gathering in large bodies, and that those living in the Pongola valley were removing their corn and other possessions to caves and mountain fastnesses. All hope of a peaceful settlement of the Zulu difficulty was at an end.

## Colonel Wood's Column.

The first actual entrance into Zululand was made by **Colonel Wood's column,** which in two divisions crossed the **Blood River** hard by Conference Hill on the 6th of January. It was there joined by **Piet Uys,** worthy scion of a brave race and bearer of a historic name. He was son of that Piet Uys who in 1838 was killed near Umgungundhlovu in a futile attack on Dingaan, and brother of the noble boy who died at his father's side. Forty Dutch burghers accompanied Uys. Colonel Wood's movements were marked by great skill and caution. Patrols were daily sent out and small bodies of Zulus were seen but no collision took place. The column first encamped at Bemba's Kop, the chief of that name surrendering at once. On the 17th of January it moved towards the sources of the White Umfolosi and thence to **Kambula,** where Colonel Wood entrenched himself.

## Usirayo's Stronghold.

**The main column** under Colonel Glyn and accompanied by the General crossed **the Buffalo at Rorke's**

**Drift** on the 11th of January. On the following day the troops had their first brush with the Zulus and an easy and delusive success. Colonel Glyn attacked the mountain stronghold of **Usirayo** on the 'Ngutu range and met with only a feeble resistance. In half-an-hour the caves and the cattle were in the possession of the English. About 30 Zulus were killed, including one of Usirayo's sons. The following week was occupied in trying to make the roads or tracks passable for the wagons, on which the force depended for supplies. Heavy rains had fallen and the roads were little better than swamps. It was the 20th of January before Colonel Glyn's column had advanced to the mountain of **Isandhlwana,** about 10 miles from Rorke's Drift. The camp was pitched at its base. Very few of the enemy were seen, and no opposition had been made to the inward march of the troops.

## The Twenty-Second of January, 1879.

The unopposed entrance of the soldiers was only the lull before the storm. On the 20th of January a patrol party of Police, Volunteers, and Native Contingent, under the command of **Major Dartnell,** went out from the camp in the direction of the chief **Matyana's** stronghold. On the 21st, Major Dartnell reported by message that the Zulus were near him in great force. At dawn on the 22nd Lord Chelmsford and Colonel Glyn moved out from **Isandhlwana** with reinforcements, leaving a portion of the column under **Colonel Pulleine** to guard the camp. After the General's departure Zulus were seen as early as 6 o'clock hovering on the heights near, and a party of the Native Contingent was sent out to scout. Returning to camp about 9 o'clock, the officer in charge reported that the Zulus were close at hand in large numbers.

About 10 o'clock **Colonel Durnford** arrived from the camp at Kranskop with 300 mounted natives. The force at Colonel Pulleine's disposal then consisted of about **700 Europeans** and **600 natives.** The Europeans were made up of about 500 men of the 24th, 80 artillerymen, 30 Natal Carbineers, 35 Mounted Police, 35 Mounted Infantry, and 20 men of the Buffalo Border Guard and the Newcastle Rifles. No attempt was made to strengthen the camp. Instead of that the small force was scattered in various directions in the vain hope of checking the Zulu advance. A company of the 24th was sent to a neck of the hill a mile and a half distant. All these parties were obliged to retire gradually before the Zulu impi, which made the attack in its usual fashion—a mass of men in the centre, with horn-shaped wings thrown out from each side and slowly meeting so as to enclose the doomed camp. The number of the Zulus was overwhelming, and it was evident from the first that all was lost. **Ten or eleven of Cetywayo's regiments,** the flower of his army, in all about 23,000 or 24,000 men, came on in a black resistless mass. The men of the crack regiment were conspicuous by scarlet feathers.

The defenders of the camp, driven back at all points by the encircling foe, at last **made a stand together.** The fire of both infantry and mounted men was steady and rapid and the great guns did much execution in the enemy's ranks. The Zulus pressed steadily forward without hesitation or excitement and with the most fearless bravery. Rank after rank was mown down by the rain of fire from the Martini-Henrys, but was immediately closed up—"each stepping where his comrade stood the instant that he fell." Our men fought as gallantly and well. In that dread hour with death staring them in the face, regular and volunteer alike fought shoulder to shoulder with cool and determined courage. Natal remembers her sons who fell on that fatal

field with pride as well as sorrow. Whenever the main body of the Zulus saw that the wings were touching each other, they rushed forward with wild yells of triumph brandishing their stabbing assegais. The end had come. It was no longer a fight; it was a butchery. Horse and foot, black and white, Zulus and Englishmen, were mingled in a scene of the wildest confusion. For the infantry there was no escape. Every man was killed. Even to mounted men escape was almost impossible, for the ground was covered with boulders and grooved with *dongas*. Those who attempted the ride made their way across country for a ford of the Buffalo since known as **Fugitive's Drift,** five miles from Isandhlwana. The wagon road was guarded by the enemy. Many of the fugitives were killed on the way, and many were drowned or shot in crossing the river. **Lieutenant Melville** and **Lieutenant Coghill** of the 24th escaped with the colours of the regiment, but were both shot on the way. Melville's body was found with the colours wrapped round him. On the bank of the river where they fell, overlooking Fugitive's Drift, a monument has been erected to their memory. The number of Europeans who escaped from Isandhlwana was about **forty,** besides natives on horseback and on foot. Colonel Pulleine and Colonel Durnford were among the slain.

Two mistakes in connexion with that day of slaughter must ever be deplored. The General commanding had no trustworthy information of the movements of the enemy and was thus in complete ignorance of the presence of the bulk of the Zulu army so close to his camp. Had the camp been at once laagered in Dutch fashion on the first indication of the enemy's presence, or even had the force been formed in hollow square, it may be that

> "Another sight had seen that morn,
> From Fate's dark book a leaf been torn."

The death-roll of Natalians alone was a long one. Twenty-two of the light-hearted lads who rode away from Maritzburg in December, 1878, as if for a holiday, lay on the trampled sod of Isandhlwana done to death with savage spears. Besides these, seven men of the Newcastle Mounted Rifles, three of the Buffalo Border Guard, twenty-six of the Natal Mounted Police, as well as officers of the irregular corps, many of whom had relations in the colony, were among the slain. Isandhlwana is **the Flodden of Natal.**

Not alone in English and Natal homes was there mourning for the youth who fell on that day of dark despair. The victory of the 22nd of January was a dearly-bought victory for the **Zulus.** In nearly every kraal in Zululand there was weeping and wailing for those who would return no more. The flower of the Zulu youth lay dead in the shadow of Isandhlwana.

## Rorke's Drift.

The one ray of sunshine on that day of gloom was the defence of the commissariat and hospital post near **Rorke's Drift** on the Natal side of the Buffalo. After the Zulu victory at Isandhlwana about 4,000 of the Undi corps at once pushed onward to take possession of the English camp at the drift. They crossed the Buffalo about four miles lower down. **Lieutenant Chard** of the Royal Engineers had been left in command of the post. About half-past three in the afternoon two mounted men appeared at the river and shouted to be taken across. They told the terrible news of Isandhlwana; and they had seen the Zulus marching in the direction of Rorke's Drift.

No time was lost by Lieutenant Chard. In conjunction with **Lieutenant Bromhead** of the 24th and **Mr. Dalton,** a commissariat officer, he at once set about the defence of

the thatched cottage and outhouses which formed their camp, and resolved to hold it at all costs. The store and the hospital were barricaded and loopholed, and the spaces between the buildings filled up with the wagons and with sacks of mealies. When that work was completed, a number of the Native Contingent who had escaped from Isandhlwana and whose courage now failed them left the camp and made for Helpmakaar. The defences were considered too extended for the number of men left, which was only 104 exclusive of 35 in hospital. An inner wall of biscuit boxes was then begun. About half-past four, when the wall was two boxes high, 500 or 600 Zulus came rapidly in sight and rushed against the rude ramparts. From that hour until after midnight desperate assaults were made by the Zulus and splendidly repulsed by the little garrison with both rifle and bayonet. The hospital, set on fire by the enemy, was defended room by room and all the sick men were brought out. At four o'clock on the morning of the 23rd the Zulus retired leaving 350 of their number lying dead round the camp. Its heroic defenders lost 17 men.

**The repulse of 4,000 Zulus by a hundred men** entrenched within the slender defences of sacks of corn and boxes of biscuits is one of the most glorious exploits in the records of the British army—

> "Setting Rorke's Drift, till now unhonoured name,
> By Plassey and Assaye, and fights of fame."

## A Sad Bivouac.

**Lord Chelmsford** did not learn until the afternoon of the same day that the camp at Isandhlwana had been attacked and was in the possession of the enemy. There was no fighting at Matyana's stronghold. The Zulus showed at a distance and then retreated, apparently as a ruse to

keep the main body of our troops away from the real point of attack. When about six miles from Isandhlwana on his way back the dreadful news was brought to the General. He at once recalled Colonel Glyn and advanced with all the force against the camp which he expected to find in possession of the enemy. But the Zulus had quitted the scene of their victory and they did not renew the attack. Lord Chelmsford found the camp in dire confusion. The oxen and horses, the rifles and ammunition, were captured; the tents burned; the wagons looted and destroyed. And dead Englishmen and dead Zulus lay side by side among the long grass. Lord Chelmsford passed the night in the devastated camp. No English General has ever had a more mournful bivouac.

At dawn next day the whole force moved on to **Rorke's Drift,** prepared to find that the soldiers there had shared the fate of their comrades at Isandhlwana. Great was the General's relief when he galloped up to the little fort about 8 o'clock to find it still in our possession. In an official despatch he expressed his belief that the undaunted bravery of the defenders of Rorke's Drift had "no doubt saved Natal from a serious invasion."

## Etshowe.

The main column of the invading army thus suffered a signal and unexpected reverse. **Colonel Wood,** ably seconded by **Colonel Buller** and **Commandant Piet Uys,** continued from his camp at Kambula to harass and engage the enemy by means of forays conducted with great gallantry and skill. **Colonel Pearson's** column which crossed at the Tugela mouth continued its march unopposed until the day of Isandhlwana. On the morning of that day the column started at 5 o'clock and at eight halted at

the **Inyezane River** for breakfast. There the English were attacked by about 4,000 Zulus who had been lying concealed among bushes and in gullies. The engagement lasted an hour and a half. The Zulus fought and fired steadily, but rockets, shells, and musketry at last drove them back into the open plain across which they fled in every direction. The Natal Volunteers — the Victoria Mounted Rifles, the Stanger Mounted Rifles, and the Natal Hussars—stood their "baptism of fire" calmly and well. The Durban Mounted Rifles were guarding the wagons and came up as the last shots were being fired.

The column then resumed its march and moved up the steep ascent to the high land round **Etshowe,** which was reached next day. Etshowe was then only a Norwegian mission-station—the oldest in Zululand, and 36 miles from the Natal border. There, six days later, Colonel Pearson received news of Isandhlwana. He had intended to march on to Cetywayo's royal kraal of Ulundi, but after hearing of that disaster, it only remained for him either to stay where he was or to retire without delay to the Tugela. He determined to hold the fort. To economise supplies, all the mounted men were at once sent back to the border, which they reached in safety at midnight on the 29th. Etshowe, which stands in a commanding position with open country round, was at once strongly fortified. Colonel Pearson had over 1,300 fighting men and a good supply of ammunition. Shut out from the rest of the world, he and his men held Etshowe for over two months in hourly expectation of an attack from the whole Zulu army. The attack was never made.

## After Isandhlwana.

The first campaign of the Zulu war ended at **Isandhlwana.** The Rorke's Drift column evacuated Zululand and

encamped at Helpmakaar. The further prosecntion of the war was deferred until the arrival of more troops from England. The excitement in Natal was intense. A clond of woe hnng over the colony; "the Angel of Death was abroad in the land." Every precaution was taken by the authorities in view of the possibility of a Zuln invasion. In addition to the natural defence of the flooded Tugela, the frontier was strengthened by fortified posts, and a border guard was established. The farmers near the border went into laager, and every town and village made preparations for defence. In **Maritzburg** a laager was formed embracing that part of the city between Commercial Road and Timber Street and between Longmarket Street and Pietermaritz Street, and capable of housing 4,000 people. The windows of the buildings were shnttered and loopholed and open spaces were barricaded. On the Snnday following Isandhlwana the citizens worshipped in churches hung with black. The noise of workmen erecting defences and the rumble of wagons conveying ammnnition to the Court House disturbed the nsual quiet of that day of rest. Three guns fired from Fort Napier was the appointed signal for the townspeople to go into the laager. The laager was fortunately never required. The High Commissioner, **Sir Bartle Frere,** remained in Natal throngh that critical period.

In **England** the greatest sensation was cansed by the disaster to the British arms. All the world heard of Isandhlwana, of Rorke's Drift, of Etshowe. **H.M.S. Shah, Captain Bradshaw,** brought the first reinforcements to Natal on the 6th of March. She had tonched at **St. Helena** on her way home from India, and **Governor Janisch,** who had heard of the Isandhlwana disaster, despatched all the available troops in the island—200 men —to the help of Lord Chelmsford. The Shah contributed

392 men of the Naval Brigade. Other vessels with troops from England speedily followed the Shah. They brought two cavalry regiments, the 17th Lancers and the 1st Dragoon Guards with their horses, 6 regiments of infantry, 2 field batteries of artillery, and one company of Engineers. With the troops came several war-correspondents of English newspapers. Among them was **Dr. William Russell,** the distinguished Crimean correspondent of the Times.

At the beginning of April a column of about 6,000 men started from Fort Tenedos for the relief of **Etshowe.**

## Hlobane and Kambula.

In the meantime Colonel Wood's column had not been free from reverses. Captain Moriarty while escorting a train of wagons from Derby to Luneburg with a company of the 80th Regiment, was surprised on the 12th March by Zulus under **Umbeline** at the **Intombi River** and had 44 of his men killed. On the 28th of the same month Colonel Wood sent out a force from the Kambula camp to storm the **Hlobane mountain,** the stronghold of Umbeline. The four hundred mounted men under **Colonel Buller** succeeded in reaching the top with some loss of life. They had been there a few hours when they saw that the mountain was nearly surrounded by an immense Zulu impi. Kafirs in great numbers were making their way up all the baboon-paths to cut off their retreat. The only pass by which our men could escape was a steep boulder-strewn descent where it was almost impossible to keep on horseback. Many deeds of bravery were performed during that terrible ride. Colonel Buller risked his life six times to rescue men who had lost their horses. Nearly half the troopers who returned to the camp were saved by riding behind gallant comrades who had stopped to pick them up at the imminent peril of

their own lives. In the flight from Hlobane 120 men were killed, including two brave officers, **Commandant Piet Uys** and **Colonel Weatherley.** Piet Uys was surrounded and stabbed when going back to save his son.

On the next day, the 29th, the **Kambula camp** was fiercely attacked by the impi which surrounded Hlobane. It numbered about 20,000 men and comprised the strength of Cetywayo's army. The Zulus advanced on the camp in their usual way and manifested the same indifference to danger and death which characterised them at Isandhlwana. The tremendous fire from the artillery at last proved too much for them and they wavered and fled. The fight lasted from 1 o'clock to 6, and the cavalry pursued the retreating foe till it was too dark to see. On our side thirty men were killed and fifty wounded. Twelve hundred Zulus were slain.

## Ginginhlovo.

The Etshowe Relief column under Lord Chelmsford was attacked on the morning of the 3rd April at **Ginginhlovo,** about 6 miles south of the Inyezane River. Taught by bitter experience the General had his force entrenched and properly defended. At six o'clock the camp was surrounded by the Zulus numbering about 10,000. The fight lasted an hour and a half and ended in the retreat of the enemy. They were pursued by the mounted men and Native Contingent for four miles. Masses of Zulus then appeared on the hills near but dispersed on being shelled from the camp. Lord Chelmsford left part of his force in laager at Ginginhlovo and hurried on to **Etshowe** next day. The beleaguered camp was relieved and Colonel Pearson and his men started immediately on their way back to the Tugela.

## Ulundi.

No great battle was fought after Ginginhlovo until the 4th of July, almost immediately after the arrival of **Sir Garnet Wolseley** as Commander-in-Chief and High Commissioner of Natal and the Transvaal. The main body of the English army with **Lord Chelmsford** in command slowly advanced into Zululand on the line of Colonel Wood's original march from Utrecht, and laagered about half-a-mile from the White Umfolosi and not far distant from the royal kraal of Ulundi. At dawn on the 4th of July the column, consisting of about 3,000 infantry and 300 cavalry, left the camp and advanced rapidly on **Ulundi** or **Undi**—*the high place*. The troops were formed in hollow square on the grassy plain, the Gatling guns in front and the field-pieces at each corner. The Zulus, who had been massing for some time, soon advanced in thousands, in their usual form and with their usual disregard of danger, to within a hundred yards of the English force. A deadly rain of shot and shell was poured into their ranks. For twenty minutes they bore the terrific fire, and then all at once turned and fled. They were followed and speared in hundreds by the Lancers until the broken ground prevented further pursuit. The deserted kraals of Ulundi were then burned, and the force returned to camp at six in the evening.

The Zulu generals in this last great battle with the English were **Usirayo** and **Dabulamanzi,** the King's brother. **Cetywayo,** who during the war manifested none of the personal courage which animated his "braves," is said to have watched the battle of Ulundi from a hill near—the battle which gave the English the command of Zululand and destroyed for ever the military despotism begun by Dingiswayo and developed by Chaka. **Ulundi was the end of the Zulu war.**

In the **Court Gardens of Maritzburg** stands a monument of white marble surmounted by the figure of Victory. It is erected " in memory of Honour and in hope of Peace." On its sides are inscribed the names of the Natalians who fell in the last great conflict with savagery in South Africa, the regiments and corps which took part in the war, and the numbers of the slain.

## Cetywayo Captive.

The Zulu people accepted their defeat with calmness, and all the influential chiefs gave in their submission. But **Cetywayo** was yet at large and the permanent peace of the country depended on his capture. A party headed by **Lord Gifford** and **Major Marter** was organised for the pursuit of the fugitive King. He was closely followed from kraal to kraal, but he baffled his pursuers day after day and week after week. When the search for him seemed almost hopeless he was caught by Major Marter in a hut in the heart of the **Ingome Forest,** north of the Black Umfolosi. Cetywayo was taken to Ulundi and thence to Port Durnford. The steamer Natal was waiting there for the last of the Zulu Kings, and escorted by H.M.S. Forester conveyed him straight to **Capetown.**

## The Thirteen Kinglets.

On the 1st of September, the day after Cetywayo left the shores of Zululand a captive, and the sixth anniversary of his coronation by Sir Theophilus Shepstone, **Sir Garnet Wolseley** assembled the **Zulu chiefs** at Ulundi. **The valley of the White Umfolosi** had witnessed the beginnings of the Zulu power and was now the scene of its end. Sir Garnet, interpreted by Mr. John Shepstone, announced to the chiefs that the old order of things had passed away

in Zululand and had yielded place to new. The dynasty of **Chaka** was for ever deposed. The country was divided into **thirteen districts** each ruled over by a chief or kinglet. The chiefs were to hold office by the gift of the Queen subject to certain conditions which were in effect those prescribed in the Ultimatum. At the meeting the thirteen chiefs were nominated. John Dunn was one of them; Hlubi, a Basuto chief, got Usirayo's district. **A British Resident** was appointed to Zululand to be the adviser of the chiefs and the channel of communication between them and the Government. The boundary of Zululand was fixed as the Blood River, the Pemvane River, and the Pongola River, the Utrecht and Luneburg districts being thus excluded.

## The Death of the Prince Imperial.

One of the saddest episodes in the war with Cetywayo was the death of the young **Prince Imperial of France,** son of that Napoleon who was reft of his crown at Sedan, the hope of the Bonapartists, and the only child of his widowed mother. Desirous of gaining military experience he joined Lord Chelmsford's staff as a volunteer. On the morning of the 1st of June the Prince was out with a small reconnoitring party which had off-saddled to rest near the **Ityotyozi River.** Just as the party was again starting, 50 or 60 Zulus who had been concealed in a donga rushed out and fired. Every one who could sprang on his horse and galloped for his life. Two of the troopers were killed. The Prince's horse was always restive, and the sudden commotion made it so rear and plunge that it was impossible for the Prince to mount. Sword in hand he faced the Zulus but was overpowered and stabbed. His body was brought down to Durban where it was embarked in **H.M.S.**

**Boadicea** for England amidst manifestations of profound respect and sympathy from the colonists and the military.

**The Empress Eugenie,** mother of the Prince, came to Natal in 1880 and made a melancholy pilgrimage to the scene of her son's death.

| | |
|---|---|
| Transvaal annexed to England ... ... | 1877 |
| Ultimatum delivered to Cetywayo ... ... | 1878 |
| The Zulu War ... ... ... ... | 1879 |

---

## CHAPTER XI.

### *THE BOER WAR.*

### The Gathering Storm.

The war with Cetywayo was followed by another trouble both for Natal and for the Imperial Government. The trouble arose from the annexation of the Transvaal in 1877. When that Republic was absorbed by England it was beset by difficulties within and by foes without, both of which it was helpless to combat. Even those boers who hated England with a bitter hatred had to acquiesce, although sullenly, in the only way of escape from anarchy and ruin. But when prosperity began to dawn upon the country under the English Government there were soon signs of growing discontent. The boers expected a free Constitution like that of the Cape, but **no representative assembly** of any kind was given to them although the necessity of such a privilege being granted was urged by Sir Theophilus

Shepstone. They were the descendants of the men who had gone out into the wilds and risked their lives for freedom, and they could not quietly endure to be blotted out from a share in the government of the country conquered by their fathers' strong right arms.

Two leading burghers, **Paul Kruger** and **Dr. Jorissen,** went to England and protested against the annexation. **Lord Carnarvon** gave them no hope that the country would be restored to the Dutch. The feeling of the boers against English rule grew stronger every day and at the end of 1878 another appeal was made to England. The envoys were **Mr. Kruger** and **Mr. Joubert** with **Mr. Bok** as their secretary. They had no more success than had the first deputation. During the war with Cetywayo no assistance was volunteered to the English except by the Utrecht boers under the gallant Piet Uys. **Sir Theophilus Shepstone,** who was a great favourite personally with all the boers, was succeeded in the Governorship of the Transvaal by Sir Owen Lanyon in March, 1879. After his appointment matters grew rapidly worse. There was then an unpopular governor added to an unpopular government. **Sir Owen Lanyon** had no sympathy with the history or ways of the people he was called upon to govern. His manners were not conciliatory and his attitude very much aggravated the feeling against English rule. There is no doubt that had the political freedom recommended by Sir Theophilus Shepstone been given to the Dutch, and had that veteran statesman remained long enough at the helm of affairs to steer the infant colony into smooth water, the agitation would have ended with the visit of the second deputation to England.

In April of the same year **Sir Bartle Frere** had an interview with the boer leaders at Erasmus Spruit near

Pretoria. Mnch was expected from the meeting but it ended in nothing except the refusal of some of the people to pay taxes. After **Sir Garnet Wolseley** met the Znlu chiefs at Ulundi on the 1st of September he proceeded to the Transvaal. As High Commissioner he issued a proclamation to the effect that the country wonld "for ever" form part of the Queen's dominions; and he more than once made the now historic assertion that "so long as the sun shone in the heavens," so long would the Transvaal be English territory.

## The Triumvirate.

Increased opposition to the anthorities in all quarters was the result of Sir Garnet Wolseley's proclamation. Mass meetings of the boers were held at which they declared their independence of the Queen's anthority. Pretorius and Bok were arrested for high treason, bnt were soon liberated. A Legislative Assembly granted at this time did not tend to soothe the irritated feelings of the boers. The legislature consisted of a number of the officials and six members nominated by the Governor. Snch an assembly was only **a mockery of their Volksraad.**

There was meanwhile a change of Governors in Natal. Sir Henry Bulwer was succeeded in July, 1880, by **Sir George Pomeroy Colley,** who as Colonel Colley accompanied Sir Garnet Wolseley to Natal after the Langalibalele outbreak. A considerable nnmber of the troops was withdrawn from the Transvaal after his arrival, and affairs shortly afterwards began to assnme a serions aspect. An appeal for release was once more made to the English Government by the boers. **Mr. Gladstone,** who had seemed while in Opposition to favonr the restoration of their independence, returned a decided "no" to their petition.

A great meeting of the boers was then held from the 8th to the 13th of December at **Paardekraal,** now **Krugersdorp** and a gold-producing centre, on the road from Pretoria to Potchefstroom. At that meeting they resolved to fight. A **Triumvirate** was formed consisting of **Kruger, Joubert,** and **Pretorius,** and they issued a long proclamation "making it known to everybody" that the Republic was re-established. They declared the country in a state of siege and under the provisions of martial law Three commandoes were organised. One was ordered to prevent the 94th Regiment on the march from Lydenburg from reaching Pretoria and to intercept Captain Froome with two companies of the same regiment between Wakkerstroom and Standerton. Another went to Potchefstroom to get the proclamation printed. The force was necessary to overawe or protect the printer. The third and largest marched to Heidelberg and took possession of the town without difficulty. There, on the historic 16th of December, "Dingaan's Day," **the flag of the Republic** was once more hoisted.

## Bronkhorst Spruit.

**Captain Froome** of the 94th reached Standerton by a forced march before the boers had time to attack him. The main body of his regiment on the march to Pretoria was not so fortunate. It consisted of 246 men with 33 wagons under the command of **Colonel Anstruther.** Before leaving Middelburg Colonel Anstruther was warned that he would be attacked on the line of march. On the 20th of December the troops were marching on with the band playing when suddenly mounted boers appeared all round them at a place called **Bronkhorst Spruit.** There was a wooded ravine to the right and near at hand on both sides of the

road were farm-houses surrounded by trees under whose cover the horsemen had approached unobserved. The order was given to halt, the band stopped playing, and an effort was made to get the wagons to close up. A messenger carrying a white flag came from the boers with a letter signed by Joubert asking Colonel Anstruther to stay where he was until Sir Owen Lanyon's intentions were known. If he advanced his movement would be taken as a declaration of war. Two minutes were allowed him to decide. Colonel Anstruther replied that his orders were to march to Pretoria and that to Pretoria he would go. He desired the messenger to inform his leader to that effect and to bring him a reply. But without further waiting or warning the boers rode forward and opened a sharp fire on the troops. In ten minutes over 150 officers and men were killed or wounded, and the order was given to surrender. The officers were all killed except two; Colonel Anstruther was mortally wounded and survived only a few days. The wife of Sergeant-Major Fox was dangerously wounded, and the boers expressed their regret at having injured a woman. **Mrs. Smith,** the bandmaster's widow, behaved heroically and did her utmost to help the wounded. She was afterwards publicly thanked by the Commandant, and, on her return to England, by Her Majesty the Queen.

The prisoners and wounded men received the kindest treatment from the boers. Those who were not able to be removed to the boer camp were taken to neighbouring farm-houses and supplied with whatever they required. **Conductor Egerton** got leave to go to Pretoria for medical assistance, and wounded as he was walked the forty miles in eleven hours. Under his tunic he carried the regimental colours which had been concealed in a wagon-box during the attack. His melancholy news removed all doubt as

to whether war had begun. The loyalists in Pretoria immediately went into laager and so did the soldiers and loyal inhabitants of Potchefstroom, Wakkerstroom, Lydenburg, Rustenburg, Marabastad, and Standerton. The boers had complete possession of Heidelberg, Middelburg, and Utrecht.

**The survivors of the 94th** after being conveyed to Heidelberg were put across the Vaal into the Free State and allowed to shift for themselves. By the kindness of both Dutch and English residents they obtained food and clothing, and on their way through the Free State were overtaken by wagons which brought them on to Maritzburg. The poor fellows numbering about forty marched up Church Street to the Camp on the 10th of January. Their helmets had been taken from them by the boers and in the diversity of their costume they more resembled Sir John Falstaff's recruits than a regiment of British infantry.

## The Transvaal Boers.

The boers who thus took up arms for their independence were actuated by the same spirit that incited their fathers forty years before to fight with the English troops, with Moselekatse, and with Dingaan. A generation had not changed their mode of life or their mode of thought. The young men who had grown up during that period were densely ignorant and prejudiced. They had only a smattering of education and they lived their lives in far-scattered homesteads where the affairs of the outside world never penetrated. They knew nothing and cared for nothing except the traditions, the beliefs, and the customs of their fathers. The Bible was still the boers' only literature as it had been for two centuries; and their views of law and justice and government were all drawn from its pages.

They regarded the annexation of their country as an unrighteous act and a direct violation of the laws of God. And they took up arms with the earnest conviction that the God of battles in whose cause they fought would be with them and them alone. Their training and manner of life gave the boers many advantages over the English soldiers. They were almost from their cradles accustomed to ride and shoot. They knew every mile of the country. In war as in hunting their aim was unerring, and they took advantage of every boulder and scrap of cover. After receiving general orders each man was master of his own movements and did what seemed best for the common cause. No cumbersome wagon-train impeded a boer force on the march. Every man carried his own necessaries. With his horse and rifle and ammunition, a blanket, a few rusks, and some strips of *biltong* or dried flesh, the boer was ready for march, battle, and bivouac.

## Guarding the Pass.

The news of the boer rising caused much excitement in Natal. **General Sir George Colley,** the Lieutenant-Governor and Commander-in-Chief, felt it his duty to proceed at once to the relief of the loyalists and soldiers beleaguered in the different towns of the Transvaal. He could muster only 1,000 men. The little force comprised men of the 58th Regiment, 60th Rifles, 21st Regiment, Naval Brigade, and Artillery. Sir George Colley in a general order appealed to the soldiers to vindicate the honour of the British arms, and spoke of **the Dutch** as "a brave and high-spirited people, though misled and deluded." After-events showed that he sadly underrated them as fighting men.

The boers prepared to oppose the advance of the relief column into the Transvaal. They entered Natal territory

with that object and took possession of **Laing's Nek,** the lowest part of a ridge which slopes from Amajuba mountain to the banks of the Buffalo and over which the main road passes. There is a gentle slope of about five hundred yards from the ground below to the crest of the ridge where the road passes through a cutting four or five feet deep. At the bottom of the slope near the road is the farm-house, with garden and stone cattle-kraals, from whose owner the Nek takes its name. The boers took up a position behind the ridge on both sides of the wagon road. Large stones and trenches afforded them effectual concealment and protection. Artillery was what they chiefly dreaded, and Laing's Nek appeared to afford the desired shelter. On the 27th of January, 1881, the boers with **Commandant Piet Joubert** in command lay there in wait for the English force.

## Laing's Nek.

Sir George Colley pitched his camp at **Mount Prospect,** 4 miles from the Nek, the same night on which the boers took possession of that now famous pass. At six o'clock on the morning of the 28th, he advanced to attack the boer position with the 58th Regiment commanded by **Colonel Deane,** a mounted squadron of 70 men, the 60th Rifles, the Naval Brigade with 3 rocket tubes, and the Artillery with six guns. Some boers who were stationed about Laing's cattle kraals were driven thence by the rocket tubes. The guns began to shell the Nek about 10 o'clock and continued for twenty minutes without any of the boers being seen on the ridge. Orders were then given to attack a spur of the ridge on the right of the road, and the mounted infantry and the 58th climbed up the slippery slopes at different points. The mounted men were the first sufferers. As soon as they were high enough to be seen by the boers

concealed behind every stone, a deadly volley laid half of them low. The remainder bravely returned to the charge but were forced to retire. It fared no better with the 58th. Colonel Deane led his men up the long and steep slope in one column, which proved simply a great target for the boer marksmen. Colonel Deane himself was killed, and many of his officers. The 58th found it impossible to maintain their position in face of the deadly fire poured into them, and could only retire. During the retreat, Lieutenant Baillie, who carried the colours, was mortally wounded. Under a flag of truce the dead were buried and the wounded removed to the camp. Seventy-three men were killed and a hundred wounded. The loss on the boer side was trifling. Sir George Colley addressed the men in camp after the fight, and congratulated the 58th on the brave charge they had made. In the most noble-minded way he imputed the blame of the day's disaster solely to himself. With the weakened force at his command the General was compelled to await at Mount Prospect the arrival of reinforcements.

## The Ingogo Heights.

On the 7th of February the post-runner and his escort on their way to Newcastle were fired upon by a party of boers near the double drift of the Ingogo and obliged to return to Mount Prospect. It was easy for the boers to take possession of the main road from Newcastle without going near the camp by simply skirting the western base of Amajuba and Inkwelo and so entering the Ingogo valley. Sir George Colley moved out of camp on the 8th with 270 men and 4 guns to patrol the road and escort some wagons he expected from Newcastle. Shortly after the force had crossed the double drift of the Ingogo the scouts reported that the boers were in large numbers about half-a-mile

distant. Sir George Colley moved on up **the Ingogo heights** and was there attacked on a triangular plateau close to the main road. The boers occupied the slopes of the plateau on all sides and, shielded by rocks and long rank grass, kept up a constant and galling fire. The engagement lasted from noon until long after nightfall. There was no water to be had and the wounded suffered terribly as they lay on the exposed plateau under the burning sun. Rain fell heavily after darkness set in, and many died from the chill after the scorching heat of the day. **Captain McGregor,** the General's military secretary, and **Mr. Stuart,** Resident Magistrate of Ixopo, interpreter on the staff, were both killed. The wounded were left on the field in charge of **Mr. Ritchie,** the military chaplain, and the rest of the survivors moved back to Mount Prospect in the darkness of the night. The Ingogo, knee-deep when the soldiers crossed in the morning, had become a raging torrent, and many of the men were swept down in attempting to ford it. One hundred and fifty men were lost by the fight and the flooded river. Next day the dead were buried and the wounded removed to Newcastle. The boers had eight of their number killed and nine wounded on the Ingogo Heights.

## Amajuba.

**Sir Evelyn Wood** with the 15th Hussars and the 92nd Highlanders had joined Sir George Colley at Newcastle. Further reinforcements were on the way up from Durban. On the 21st February Sir Evelyn Wood returned to Maritzburg to hasten their arrival at head-quarters. It was intended to march then round by the Wakkerstroom road and attack Laing's Nek in the rear.

During Sir Evelyn Wood's absence, Sir George Colley planned an expedition by which he hoped to retrieve his

two former defeats. On the evening of Saturday, the 26th February, the General left Mount Prospect with about 600 men taken from the 58th, the 60th Rifles, the 92nd Highlanders, and the Naval Brigade. The destination of the party was the top of **Amajuba Mountain,** a position which commanded the boer camp at Laing's Nek. The force marched without lights and with the utmost quietness. After climbing half-way up the **Inkwelo Mountain** a broad ridge which joins it to Amajuba was reached. At the Inkwelo end of the ridge 140 men of the 60th were posted, and a company of the 92nd was left at the other or Amajuba end with orders to entrench themselves. The rest of the men with native guides leading the way then climbed the almost precipitous side of the mountain. About 3 o'clock on Sunday morning the whole force, numbering nearly 400, was on the top.

At dawn **the Dutchmen at the Nek** discovered that the mountain was held by the English. Fully expecting to be shelled from Amajuba and to be attacked simultaneously from Mount Prospect, they hastily prepared to evacuate their position. But as no shells came and no movement was made from the English camp, the first alarm passed away and Joubert called for volunteers to storm the mountain. The boers crept up the slopes from terrace to terrace, and from behind rocks and bushes shot at the soldiers on the sky-line as if they were stalking deer. Continuous musketry fire, steady and fatal on the one side, wild and ineffectual on the other, broke the quiet of that hitherto tranquil height. Gradually the attacking boers reached the summit and then poured in a deadly volley. A panic seized the soldiers. They broke and fled for their lives down the rugged steep up which they had climbed. **Sir George Colley** was among the killed. He lies in a

soldier's grave in the cemetery at **Mount Prospect** surrounded by many gallant men. Few would have lived to tell the tale of defeat had the Highlanders not been entrenched on the connecting ridge. The English loss was 92 killed and 134 wounded. The boers had one man killed and five wounded.

Commandant Joubert reported to Vice-President Kruger that the "troops under General Colley fought like true heroes, but our God gave us the true victory and protected us." Kruger, in the same strain, responded that "the God of our fathers has done great things to us and hearkened to our prayers." That was the Dutch view of the fight on **Amajuba.** To an Englishman the name of the mountain recalls only sorrow, disaster, and death.

## The Beleaguered Towns.

The war meanwhile went on at widely scattered points in the Transvaal. English soldiers, English men, and English women were shut out from the rest of the world and suffered the discomforts and privations of being besieged. All the forts held out till the close of the war except **Potchefstroom** which was surrendered on the 19th of March. During the siege 25 of the defenders were killed. Two hundred and fifty people had been cooped up in a laager 25 yards square. Major Montague succeeded in holding **Standerton** with the loss of five men. Lieutenant Long commanded at **Lydenburg** and had three men killed. The fort at **Rustenburg** was constructed about 700 yards from the village and was held by Captain Auchinleck with 60 men. **Marabastad** was defended by 60 men of the 94th. The heroism and endurance displayed by both men and women in the beleaguered towns during the weary weeks of isolation form the pleasantest memories of a miserable war.

## O'Neill's Farm House.

**Sir Evelyn Wood** succeeded Sir George Colley in the command pending the arrival of Sir Frederick Roberts, the hero of Afghanistan. The feeling regarding the Amajuba disaster was intense. Ten thousand soldiers were in Natal ready and eager for the prosecution of the war. But Sir Evelyn Wood, acting on instructions from the English Government, concluded **an armistice,** and the war was never renewed. All considerations of empire and military reputation were thrown aside. **Sir Frederick Roberts** came no further than the Cape and then returned to England.

**O'Neill's farm house** under Amajuba witnessed the last scene in the ever-to-be-lamented conflict between the two white races in South Africa. There, on the 23rd of March, Sir Evelyn Wood and his staff met the boer leaders Kruger, Pretorius, and Joubert, and agreed to a treaty of peace. Complete self-government with regard to internal affairs was given to the boers with the Queen as Suzerain. A British Resident was appointed to represent Her Majesty's Government at Pretoria.

The treaty of peace created the greatest dissatisfaction, especially in military circles and among the besieged loyalists, who felt that their losses and sufferings in the cause of England had been in vain. The Transvaal was no longer English territory and the sun still shone in the heavens.

THE BOER WAR ... ... ... ... 1880—1881

## CHAPTER XII.

### *THE LAST DECADE.*

### Restoration of Cetywayo.

The **thirteen kinglets** appointed in 1879 by Sir Garnet Wolseley to have dominion in Zululand soon began to fight with each other and with the people whom they were supposed to rule. A large section of the Zulu nation was anxious that Cetywayo should be restored, and several deputations visited Maritzburg to express this desire. After learning Sir Henry Bulwer's views, the English Government decided to allow Cetywayo to return to Zululand with limited power. Since his overthrow he had been living under control on a farm near Capetown. He had also at his own request been taken on a visit to England in 1882. He was there told of the decision as to his future and he accepted the conditions laid down by the Government.

On the 29th of January, 1883, **Cetywayo** was again installed by Sir Theophilus Shepstone in the presence of 5,000 Zulus. His new dominion consisted of Zululand north of the Umhlatoos excepting a small territory in the north-east which **Usibepu,** one of the thirteen kinglets, was allowed to retain. Usibepu is a scion of the royal Zulu house and was Cetywayo's implacable foe. He is the son of Mapita and the grandson of Sotshiza, brother of Senzangakona. Zululand south of the Umhlatoos was constituted a **Reserve** ruled over by a British Commissioner. Locations were provided in the Reserve for those Zulus who did not wish to be subject to Cetywayo. The restored

monarch did not long survive his return to Zululand. Usibepu and his other enemies made a determined attack on him and compelled him to flee to the Reserve. There he lived under the protection of the Resident till his death in February, 1884.

## The New Republic.

After Cetywayo's death his adherents, the **Usutu** acknowledged his young son **Dinizulu** as his successor. "Usutu" was a name given by Cetywayo to his impis, and it became their well-known war-cry, just as "A Home!" or "A Gordon!" was the slogan of those ancient Scottish clans. There was almost constant fighting between the Usutu and the **Umandhlakazi,** *men of great strength*, the rival party headed by Usibepu. The Usutu finding themselves worsted called to their aid some boer adventurers chiefly from the Transvaal. With the help of these allies, who were led by **Lucas Meyer,** Usibepu was completely defeated. It was his turn then to flee to the Reserve for protection. In return for their successful services the boer free-lances received from the Usutu a grant of land nearly 3,000 square miles in extent in the north-west of Zululand. There they set up an independent state under the name of **"The New Republic"** with Lucas Meyer as president.

In consequence of these troubles and changes in Zululand, the English flag was hoisted in December, 1884, at **St. Lucia Bay** as a reminder that the Bay had been ceded to England by Panda in 1843. The independence of the New Republic was acknowledged by the English Government in 1886. The small state thus successfully established was in 1888 merged by mutual agreement in its great neighbour and kinsman, the Transvaal.

## The Annexation of Zululand.

With the general consent of the Zulu people, who felt themselves unable to preserve peace and order in their country, the whole of **Zululand** was declared to be **English territory** in May, 1887. The Governor of Natal is also Governor of Zululand. The country is divided into six districts each ruled by a magistrate — **Etshowe, Nkandhla, Ngutu, Emtonjaneni, Ndwandwe,** and **Lower Umfolosi.** A Resident Commissioner is stationed at Etshowe. Order is kept throughout the territory by Imperial troops and by a force of mounted native police under European officers.

In 1888 there were serious disturbances in Zululand caused by Dinizulu and some other Usutu chiefs rising in rebellion against English authority. They were brought to trial at Etshowe early in 1889. **Dinizulu** was found guilty of high treason, and sentenced to ten years' imprisonment. Two of the others, **Undabuko** and **Tshingan,** were also convicted and sentenced to 15 and 12 years' imprisonment respectively. The three chiefs have been banished to **St. Helena,** the island prison of the great Napoleon. Zululand is now at peace.

## Gold in the Transvaal.

The Transvaal Republic was ruled for more than a year by the Three who had brought the boers triumphant out of their contest with England. Ultimately **Paul Kruger** was elected President, an office he still holds. **Piet Joubert** was made Commandant-General, and **Marthinus Pretorius** retired from public life. Gradually the Republic once more drifted into trouble. Native chiefs became contumacious and rebellious. Wars were carried on with Mapoch and Mampoer in the north, and with Mankoroane and Montsioa

in the west. An almost empty treasury, caused by the expenditure on these wars and by the general mismanagement of the government, confronted the country. Trade languished, and discontent became louder and louder among all classes of the community. When the fortunes of the Transvaal were at their worst they began to mend. **Gold** was discovered in paying quantities in the **Kaap** district in 1884 and a rush of people from the neighbouring states at once took place. With the increased population a magical change for the better ensued. The exchequer was soon full to overflowing. A large town, **Barberton,** was built in the wilds; and two years later, one still larger, **Johannesburg,** sprang up on the **Witwaters Rand** where another extensive gold field was discovered. The growth of Johannesburg was like that of an American town in the Far West. The mines attracted thousands of people and there are now nearly as many Englishmen as Dutchmen in the Transvaal. The gold-fields brought prosperity not only to the Republic but to Natal and the rest of South Africa. The increase of inland trade benefited the colonial exchequer to an enormous extent. At no time in its history has the revenue of Natal been so large.

A period of depression, not uncommon in similar circumstances, followed the first eager rush for riches and is now being felt all through South Africa. Honesty and skill in mining and management and cheap and expeditious transport to the Fields will soon, however, put matters on a sound commercial basis.

## Gains and Losses.

After the death of Sir George Colley **Sir Evelyn Wood** was for some time Administrator of the Government as well as Commander-in-Chief. When he left for England after the cession of the Transvaal was finally arranged,

the Government was administered by **Colonel Mitchell,** who had come to Natal in 1878 as Colonial Secretary. In 1882 **Sir Henry Bulwer** returned with the rank of Governor and remained for three years. Pending the arrival of a successor, **Sir Charles Mitchell** once more discharged the duties of Administrator. **Sir Arthur Havelock** came in 1886 and left in 1889 before the usual term of five years had expired. **Sir Charles Mitchell,** who left the colony in 1886 and had meanwhile ruled Her Majesty's island possession of Fiji, returned as Governor in 1889 and was heartily welcomed by all Natalians.

In January, 1881, a genial and familiar presence was lost to Durban and the colony by the death of **Archdeacon Lloyd.** He had been part of Durban since 1849. In June, 1883, the head of his church in Natal followed him

"To where beyond these voices there is peace."

Distinguished as a mathematician when he came to Natal in 1853, **Bishop Colenso** afterwards became famous by his works in Biblical criticism. He was also the author or editor of many books in the Zulu language. The natives knew the Bishop as **Usobantu,** *father of the people*, and they lost in him a devoted friend. He died at Bishopstowe and was laid to rest in St. Peter's Cathedral, Maritzburg. An honoured name in Natal for 32 years became a name only in 1890 by the death of **Sir Henry Connor,** "just and faithful Knight of God," Chief Justice of the colony. He was succeeded in his high office by **Sir Michael Gallwey,** who, as Attorney-General, had been associated with him in the Judicial service since 1858.

## The Harbour Works.

A **Harbour Board** of seven members was constituted in 1881. It has worked ever since, with **Mr. Harry**

**Escombe** as its enthusiastic chairman, for the permanent improvement of the sea-entrance to the colony. It seeks to remove the sandbank or **Bar** which obstructs free and full communication with the ocean; to deepen, straighten, and protect the channel which leads thence to the harbour; and to provide in the harbour deep-water wharfage and other requirements for the growing trade of the Port.

A marvellous change has been effected on the face of the Point since the Board began its labours. Instead of the waste of sand which everywhere met the eye ten or twelve years ago, there are now hardened roads, tramways, busy yards and workshops and offices, and a line of wharves where vessels of moderate size discharge and load their cargoes—the whole a scene of ceaseless activity. The deepening of the fairway from the ocean to the harbour is a work of greater difficulty and one to which the energies of the Board are chiefly directed.

The Bar curves from the end of the Bluff right across the entrance to the Bay. It was there when the Dutch galiots visited the "River of Natal" two hundred years ago and it is there still. The bar is a submarine mass of shifting sand deposited partly by the heavy seas that surge in from the north-east, the east, and the south-east, and partly by an ocean current which runs along the coast from the southward and which sweeps round on the bar-plateau from the direction of the Cave Rock on the Bluff. The sand sinks to the bottom whenever the waves or the stream which bear it along meet with a conflicting current or other obstacle to their line of travel. The bottom of the channel consists almost entirely of the Æolian sand and shell conglomerate noticed in the chapter on the Coast Line. The Harbour Board is trying to stop the deposit of sand that feeds the bar, is cutting a deeper and straighter channel

through the conglomerate, and will then endeavour by means of dredging and tidal scour to secure and maintain a safe and easy deep-water passage from the ocean to the wharves at the Point.

In 1851, during Governor Pine's first term of office, works were begun with the object of deepening the channel and improving the bar. The engineer in charge, **Mr. John Milne,** built gradually and economically along the inner edge of the well-known Annabella Bank the solid stone training-wall which bears his name and which has withstood unimpaired the wear and tear of nearly forty years. Mr. Scott, Governor Pine's successor, was of opinion that a less substantial pier rapidly run out would be as effectual as Mr. Milne's wall of solid mason-work. The engineer refused at the Governor's bidding to modify plans which he had based on personal observation. The stoppage of the works followed Mr. Milne's resignation. A special commission then considered the question and referred it to the Admiralty. A report based on information supplied to him was sent out by **Captain Vetch,** and Governor Scott went to England to arrange for carrying out the plans he proposed. A new breakwater, constructed of timber staging filled in with stones and known as Vetch's or the North breakwater, was built at enormous expense. It started from the Back Beach about 2,300 feet to the northward of Milne's wall. A south pier or converging arm beginning from near the Cave Rock formed part of the scheme, but it was run out for only a short distance. Both structures gradually fell to pieces. They are now entirely discarded, and most of their material has been removed and utilised. The eminent marine engineer, **Sir John Coode,** was next consulted. He came to Natal in 1877 to take notes and to report on the best way of fighting the bar. He submitted several schemes

so apparently conflicting and so costly that the colony declined to adopt any of them.

When the Harbour Board assumed control of matters connected with the Port new works were at once begun. **Mr. Edward Innes,** who was appointed engineer, resolved, as the result of independent observation, to extend Milne's training-wall. This is now being done, and in addition a solidly-constructed breakwater is being carried seaward from the end of the Bluff and as a prolongation of it. It is named the **Innes Breakwater** in compliment to the young engineer who died in harness in 1888. His successor, **Mr. C. W. Methven,** is carrying out these plans with slight modifications, and both the pier and the breakwater are being extended into deep water. The breakwater is intended to prevent the sand brought from the southward from settling near the entrance by deflecting into deep water the current which carries it, and also to protect the channel from the injurious effects of the heavy rollers from the south and south-west. It is proposed to curve the end of the breakwater northwards in order to prevent reaching the bar the sand which is now being thrown up on it by the landward movements of the ocean. The object of the north pier is primarily to assist in guiding and in usefully concentrating the scouring power possessed by the ebb tide as it empties the waters of the Bay. The aim of the Board is to allow large ocean-going steamers to enter and leave the harbour by day or night in any weather and at any state of the tide.

## "The Younger Day."

The material progress of Natal during the last decade has been rapid and marked. The extension of the **railway** to the border has quickened trade and bound together more

intimately the relations between coast and up-country. Sleepy villages like Ladysmith and Newcastle have become bustling towns. The development of the **coal fields** is imbuing many up-country districts with life and activity. Agriculture, too, has not been neglected. Much of the time and energy hitherto given to carrying goods by wagons is now being directed to the cultivation of the land. Roads have been improved and bridges constructed over dangerous drifts. In Durban a tramline is laid from the Point to the Berea. Very few of the original sandy tracks remain in the town. The Berea is supplied with water from reservoirs on the Umbilo River near Pinetown, and the town and Point from the larger and more distant Umlaas, at a point ten miles from its mouth. A stately **Town Hall,** worthy of the town and its future, was opened in 1885. The foundation-stone of municipal buildings for Maritzburg has been lately laid. The Legislative Council which had previously met in the Court House now holds its deliberations in a separate building opened in 1889. In front of the **new senate-house** stands a white marble statue of "**Victoria, Queen-Empress,**" erected in honour of Her Majesty's Jubilee and unveiled in 1890 by His Excellency Sir Charles Mitchell. The **Jubilee** was loyally celebrated in 1887 in Natal as in other parts of Her Majesty's dominions. **Sir John Akerman, the Speaker of the Legislative Council,** an old and honoured colonist, received his knighthood on the occasion. The townspeople of Durban framed an address of congratulation to Her Majesty on her Jubilee, and the document enclosed in a casket was presented to the Queen at Windsor by **Mr. John Robinson,** a citizen of Durban, an eloquent senator and a representative Natalian. Natal was honoured in his knighthood in 1889. The social and moral needs of the people are well cared for by existing

institutions. There are churches belonging to all denominations; and schools, libraries, and literary and musical associations keep alive the spirit of the age.

## Spheres of Influence.

During the last five years England has been gradually extending her sway in South Africa. Sir Bartle Frere was regarded as a visionary when he said that some day the South African Dominion would stretch to the Zambesi. But by a treaty which Lord Salisbury has concluded with Germany, **the dominion of England** now extends six hundred miles beyond the Zambesi **to the southern shores of Lake Tanganyika.**

At the beginning of 1884 the countries in South Africa possessed or protected by England were Cape Colony, Natal, Pondoland, Basutoland, and Zululand. Walfisch Bay in Great Namaqualand, one of the safest harbours in South Africa and valuable as the only inlet to the interior for a great distance north or south, was taken possession of in 1878 and made part of the Cape Colony territory in 1884. In that year the **German Government** seized the harbour of **Angra Pequena**, some distance south of Walfisch Bay, and followed up their action by proclaiming a protectorate over **Damaraland.**

The disturbances in 1884 with native chiefs on the western border of the Transvaal caused the English Government to interfere. Some white mercenaries who had aided the chiefs received grants of land and set up two independent states, **Stellaland** and **Goshen.** Fearing that disputes might arise with the German Government and that the trade route might be endangered, England as Suzerain demanded that the Transvaal should withdraw its countenance from the Stellaland adventurers. **Sir Charles Warren**

was sent out from England with a force to put down the two Republics. They were abolished without fighting, and the country was declared to be British territory as far north as Mafeking under the title of **British Bechuanaland**. A British protectorate was proclaimed over the rest of the country to the north as far as 22° S. Latitude. In 1885 it was agreed with Germany that the eastern border of Damaraland should be 20° E. Longitude. In 1887 Germany made an agreement with Portugal to bound their respective territories at a point on the Zambesi.

Matabele Land and Moremi's country were thus the only territories south of the Zambesi uninfluenced by any European power. President Kruger wishing to extend his "sphere of influence" proposed to **Lobengula,** King of the Matabele, that he should put himself under the protection of the Republic. The English Government despatched **Mr. John Moffat** on a similar mission in 1888, and Lobengula concluded a treaty of friendship with England. The country bounded by the Zambesi on the north, Sofala on the east, the Transvaal and Bechuanaland on the south, and the 20th degree of E. Longitude on the west, was then formally proclaimed a "**sphere of British influence.**"

Shortly afterwards **Mr. Cecil Rhodes,** a wealthy and enterprising Cape colonist and now Prime Minister of the Cape, obtained certain mining and trading privileges from Lobengula. A company called the "**British South Africa Company**" was formed and received a charter from the English Government conferring on it certain powers and including the Bechuanaland protectorate in its operations. The Company has begun work in earnest. A police force has been raised to keep order in the vast dominion, and a **railway** is in progress which will be extended **from**

**Kimberley** by way of Vryburg, Mafeking, Shoshong, and Buluwayo **to the Zambesi**.

It was thought desirable, in view of the formation of this company, that the limits of English and German "spheres of influence" should be definitely fixed. By the Anglo-German treaty already mentioned, **England** is acknowledged to have control as far north as the Stevenson Road, which runs from the north end of Lake Nyassa to the south end of Lake Tanganyika, or **8° S. Latitude**. A huge territory, in extent about 250,000 square miles, has thus been added to English dominion. This new sphere of influence "possesses elevated plateaux as large as England and as healthy in climate as Natal." By the same treaty England has gained **Zanzibar,** the key of Eastern Africa, in exchange for the "sandbank of 400 acres called **Heligoland**."

Another great English company, the **British East Africa Company,** has control over a territory with an area of 750,000 square miles or more than eight times the size of Great Britain. It owns a coast line of 400 miles **from Wanga** at the mouth of the Umba River, whence German territory stretches south, **to the Juba River** where the Italian sphere of influence begins. The company's possessions march with those of Germany to the Congo Free State, which forms their western limit and which is ruled by the International African Association with the King of Belgium as its President. The Company is hard at work organising and developing. **Mombassa** the capital is growing marvellously, and a **railway** thence **to Victoria Nyanza** has been begun.

**Portugal** still holds the possessions acquired 400 years ago when her intrepid mariners rounded the Cape. She owns the east coast districts from Delagoa Bay to the

Rovuma River; and also territory on the west coast, extending 300 miles inland, from the Congo to the Cunene. Both **Italy** and **France** have a foothold in Africa and are striving to extend their influence. At all points European enterprise and industry are attacking the Dark Continent. The wave of civilisation is slowly, at times almost imperceptibly, advancing—the wave which will yet spread itself over Africa as the waters cover the sea.

> "For while the tired waves, vainly breaking,
> Seem here no painful inch to gain,
> Far back, through creeks and inlets making,
> Comes silent, flooding in, the main."

---

| | |
|---|---|
| Harbour Board established ... ... | 1881 |
| Restoration of Cetywayo ... ... ... | 1883 |
| Death of Cetywayo ... ... ... | 1884 |
| The New Republic founded ... ... | 1884 |
| Gold discovered in the Transvaal ... | ...1884—1886 |
| Zululand annexed... ... ... ... | 1887 |
| The Queen's Jubilee ... ... ... | 1887 |
| The New Republic annexed to the Transvaal | 1888 |

## GOVERNORS OF NATAL.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Martin West ... ... | Lieutenant-Governor | 1845 |
| Benjamin C. C. Pine ... | ,, ,, | 1850 |
| John Scott ... ... | ,, ,, | 1856 |
| J. Maclean ... ... | ,, ,, | 1864 |
| Robert W. Keate ... | ,, ,, | 1867 |
| Anthony Musgrave ... | ,, ,, | 1872 |
| Sir Benjamin C. C. Pine | ,, ,, | 1873 |
| Sir Henry E. Bulwer ... | ,, ,, | 1875 |
| Sir Garnet J. Wolseley ... | Governor ... | 1880 |
| Sir George Pomeroy Colley ... | ,, ... | 1880 |
| Sir Henry E. Bulwer ... ... | ,, ... | 1882 |
| Sir Arthur E. Havelock ... | ,, ... | 1886 |
| Sir Charles B. H. Mitchell ... | ,, ... | 1889 |

# INDEX.